How can the human mind represent the external world? What is thought, and can it be studied scientifically? Does it help to think of the mind as a kind of machine?

Tim Crane sets out to answer questions like these in a lively and straightforward way, presuming no prior knowledge of philosophy or related disciplines. Since its first publication in 1995, The Mechanical Mind has introduced thousands of people to some of the most important ideas in contemporary philosophy of mind. Tim Crane explains some fundamental ideas that cut across philosophy of mind, artificial intelligence and cognitive science: what the mind–body problem is; what a computer is and how it works; what thoughts are and how computers and minds might have them. He examines different models of the mind from dualist to eliminativist, and questions whether there can be thought without language and whether the mind is subject to the same causal laws as natural phenomena. The result is a fascinating exploration of the theories and arguments surrounding the notions of thought and representation.

This edition has been fully revised and updated, and includes a new chapter on consciousness and new sections on modularity and evolutionary psychology. There are also guides for further reading, a chronology and a new glossary of terms such as Mentalese, connectionism and intentionality. The Mechanical Mind is accessible to the general reader as well as students, and to anyone interested in the mechanisms of our minds.

Tim Crane is Professor of Philosophy at University College London and Director of the Philosophy Programme of the School of Advanced Study, University of London. He is the author of Elements of Mind and the editor of The Contents of Experience.
But how is it, and by what art, doth the soul read that such an image or stroke in matter . . . signifies such an object? Did we learn such an Alphabet in our Embryo-state? And how comes it to pass, that we are not aware of any such congenite apprehensions? . . . That by diversity of motions we should spell out figures, distances, magnitudes, colours, things not resembled by them, we attribute to some secret deductions.

Joseph Glanvill, *The Vanity of Dogmatizing* (1661)
THE MECHANICAL MIND

A philosophical introduction to minds, machines and mental representation

SECOND EDITION

TIM CRANE
Contents

List of figures viii
Preface to the first edition ix
Preface to the second edition xi

Introduction: the mechanical mind 1
  The mechanical world picture 2
  The mind 5

1 The puzzle of representation 8
  The idea of representation 11
  Pictures and resemblance 13
  Linguistic representation 20
  Mental representation 22
  Thought and consciousness 26
  Intentionality 30
  Brentano’s thesis 36
  Conclusion: from representation to the mind 40
  Further reading 41

2 Understanding thinkers and their thoughts 42
  The mind–body problem 43
  Understanding other minds 47
  The causal picture of thoughts 54
  Common-sense psychology 62
  The science of thought: elimination or vindication? 70
  Theory versus simulation 77
  Conclusion: from representation to computation 80
  Further reading 81
## Contents

6 Consciousness and the mechanical mind 211
   The story so far 211
   Consciousness, ‘what it’s like’ and qualia 215
   Consciousness and physicalism 219
   The limits of scientific knowledge 227
   Conclusion: what do the problems of consciousness tell us about the mechanical mind? 230
   Further reading 231

Glossary 233
The mechanical mind: a chronology 238
Notes 242
Index 256
Figures

1.1 Old man with a stick 18
3.1 Flow chart for the multiplication algorithm 89
3.2 A flow chart for boiling an egg 91
3.3 A machine table for a simple Turing machine 95
3.4 Mousetrap ‘black box’ 105
3.5 The mousetrap’s innards 105
3.6 Multiplier black box 106
3.7 Flow chart for the multiplication algorithm again 107
3.8 An ‘and-gate’ 113
4.1 Mach bands 149
4.2 Diagram of a connectionist network 161
5.1 Cummins’s ‘Tower Bridge’ picture of computation 204
This book is an introduction to some of the main preoccupations of contemporary philosophy of mind. There are many ways to write an introductory book. Rather than giving an even-handed description of all recent philosophical theories of the mind, I decided instead to follow through a line of thought which captures the essence of what seem to me the most interesting contemporary debates. Central to this line of thought is the problem of mental representation: how can the mind represent the world? This problem is the thread that binds the chapters together, and around this thread are woven the other main themes of the book: the nature of everyday psychological explanation, the causal nature of the mind, the mind as a computer and the reduction of mental content.

Although there is a continuous line of argument, I have tried to construct the book so that (to some extent) the chapters can be read independently of each other. So Chapter 1 introduces the puzzle of representation and discusses pictorial, linguistic and mental representation. Chapter 2 is about the nature of common-sense (so-called ‘folk’) psychology and the causal nature of thoughts. Chapter 3 addresses the question of whether computers can think, and Chapter 4 asks whether our minds are computers in any sense. The final chapter discusses theories of mental representation and the brief epilogue raises some sceptical doubts about the limitations of the mechanical view of the mind. So those who are interested in the question of whether the mind is a computer could read Chapters 3 and 4 independently of the rest of the book. And those who are more interested in the more purely ‘philosophical’ problems might wish to read Chapters 1 and 2 separately. I have tried to indicate where the discussion gets more complicated, and which sections a beginner might like to skip. In general, though, Chapters 4 and 5 are heavier going than Chapters 1–3.
At the end of each chapter, I have given suggestions for further reading. More detailed references are given in the endnotes, which are intended only for the student who wishes to follow up the debate – no-one needs to read the endnotes in order to understand the book.

I have presented most of the material in this book in lectures and seminars at University College London over the last few years, and I am very grateful to my students for their reactions. I am also grateful to audiences at the Universities of Bristol, Kent and Nottingham, where earlier versions of Chapters 3 and 4 were presented as lectures. I would like to thank Stefan McGrath for his invaluable editorial advice, Caroline Cox, Stephen Cox, Virginia Cox, Petr Kolář, Ondrej Majer, Michael Ratledge and Vladimír Svoboda for their helpful comments on earlier versions of some chapters, Roger Bowdler for the drawings and Ted Honderich for his generous encouragement at an early stage. I owe a special debt to my colleagues Mike Martin, Greg McCulloch, Scott Sturgeon and Jonathan Wolff for their detailed and perceptive comments on the penultimate draft of the whole book, which resulted in substantial revisions and saved me from many errors. This penultimate draft was written in Prague, while I was a guest of the Department of Logic of the Czech Academy of Sciences. My warmest thanks go the members of the Department – Petr Kolář, Pavel Materna, Ondrej Majer and Vladimír Svoboda, as well as Marie Duži – for their kind hospitality.

University College London
November 1994
Preface to the second edition

The main changes that I have made for this second edition are the replacement of the epilogue with a new chapter on consciousness, the addition of new sections on modularity and evolutionary psychology to Chapters 4 and 5, and the addition of the Glossary and Chronology at the end of the book. I have also corrected many stylistic and philosophical errors and updated the Further reading sections. My views on intentionality have changed in certain ways since I wrote this book. I now adopt an intentionalist approach to all mental phenomena, as outlined in my 2001 book, *Elements of Mind* (Oxford University Press). But I have resisted the temptation to alter significantly the exposition in Chapter 1, except where that exposition involved real errors.

I am very grateful to Tony Bruce for his enthusiastic support for a new edition of this book, to a number of anonymous reports from Routledge's readers for their excellent advice, and to Ned Block, Katalin Farkas, Hugh Mellor and Huw Price for their detailed critical comments on the first edition.

University College London
August 2002
To my parents
Introduction

The mechanical mind

A friend remarked that calling this book *The Mechanical Mind* is a bit like calling a murder mystery *The Butler Did It*. It would be a shame if the title did have this connotation, because the aim of the book is essentially to raise and examine problems rather than solve them. In broad outline, I try to do two things in this book: first, to explain the philosophical problem of mental representation; and, second, to examine the questions about the mind which arise when attempting to solve this problem in the light of dominant philosophical assumptions. Central among these assumptions is the view I call ‘the mechanical mind’. Roughly, this is the view that the mind should be thought of as a kind of causal mechanism, a natural phenomenon which behaves in a regular, systematic way, like the liver or the heart.

In the first chapter, I introduce the philosophical problem of mental representation. This problem is easily stated: how can the mind represent anything? My belief, for example, that Nixon visited China is about Nixon and China – but how can a state of my mind be ‘about’ Nixon or China? How can my state of mind direct itself on Nixon and China? What is it for a mind to represent anything at all? For that matter, what is it for *anything* (whether a mind or not) to represent anything else?

This problem, which some contemporary philosophers call ‘the problem of intentionality’, has ancient origins. But recent developments in philosophy of mind – together with developments in the related disciplines of linguistics, psychology and artificial intelligence – have raised the old problem in a new way. So, for instance, the question of whether a computer could think is now recognised to be closely tied up with the problem of intentionality. And the same is true of the question of whether there can be a ‘science of thought’: can the mind be explained by science, or does it need its
Introduction

own distinctive, non-scientific mode of explanation? A complete answer to this question depends, as we shall see, on the nature of mental representation.

Underlying most recent attempts to answer questions like these is what I am calling the mechanical view of the mind. Representation is thought to be a problem because it is hard to understand how a mere mechanism can represent the world – how states of the mechanism can ‘reach outside’ and direct themselves upon the world. The purpose of this introduction is to give more of an idea of what I mean when I talk about the mechanical mind, by outlining the origins of the idea.

The mechanical world picture

The idea that the mind is a natural mechanism derives from thinking of nature itself as a kind of mechanism. So to understand this way of looking at the mind we need to understand – in very general terms – this way of looking at nature.

The modern Western view of the world traces back to the ‘Scientific Revolution’ of the seventeenth century, and the ideas of Galileo, Francis Bacon, Descartes and Newton. In the Middle Ages and the Renaissance, the world had been thought of in organic terms. The earth itself was thought of as a kind of organism, as this passage from Leonardo da Vinci colourfully illustrates:

We can say that the earth has a vegetative soul, and that its flesh is the land, its bones are the structures of the rocks . . . its blood is the pools of water . . . its breathing and its pulses are the ebb and flow of the sea.1

This organic world picture, as we could call it, owed a vast amount to the works of Aristotle, the philosopher who had by far the greatest influence over the thought of the Middle Ages and the Renaissance. (In fact, his influence was so great that he was often just called ‘the Philosopher’.) In Aristotle’s system of the world, everything had its natural ‘place’ or condition, and things did what they did because it was in their nature to achieve their natural condition. This applied
to inorganic things as much as to organic things – stones fall to the
ground because their natural place is to be on the ground, fire rises
to its natural place in the heavens, and so on. Everything in the
universe was seen as having its final end or goal, a view that was
wholly in harmony with a conception of a universe whose ultimate
driving force is God.

In the seventeenth century, this all began to fall apart. One
important change was that the Aristotelian method of explanation
– in terms of final ends and ‘natures’ – was replaced by a mechani-
cal or mechanistic method of explanation – in terms of the regular,
deterministic behaviour of matter in motion. And the way of finding
out about the world was not by studying and interpreting the works
of Aristotle, but by observation and experiment, and the precise
mathematical measurement of quantities and interactions in nature.
The use of mathematical measurement in the scientific understand-
ing of the world was one of the key elements of the new ‘mechanical
world picture’. Galileo famously spoke about:

[T]his grand book the universe, which . . . cannot be understood unless
one first comes to comprehend the language and to read the alphabet
in which it is composed. It is written in the language of mathematics,
and its characters are triangles, circles, and other geometric figures,
without which it is humanly impossible to understand a single word
of it.2

The idea that the behaviour of the world could be measured and
understood in terms of precise mathematical equations, or laws of
nature, was at the heart of the development of the science of physics
as we know it today. To put it very roughly, we can say that, ac-
cording to the mechanical world picture, things do what they do not
because they are trying to reach their natural place or final end, or
because they are obeying the will of God, but, rather, because they
are caused to move in certain ways in accordance with the laws of
nature.

In the most general terms, this is what I mean by a mechani-
cal view of nature. Of course, the term ‘mechanical’ was – and
sometimes still is – taken to mean something much more specific.
Introduction

Mechanical systems were taken to be systems which interacted only on contact and deterministically, for instance. Later developments in science – e.g. Newton’s physics, with its postulation of gravitational forces which apparently act at a distance, or the discovery that fundamental physical processes are not deterministic – refuted the mechanical world picture in this specific sense. But these discoveries do not, of course, undermine the general picture of a world of causes which works according to natural laws or regularities; and this more general idea is what I shall mean by ‘mechanical’ in this book.

In the ‘organic’ world picture of the Middle Ages and the Renaissance, inorganic things were conceived along the lines of organic things. Everything had its natural place, fitting into the harmonious working of the ‘animal’ that is the world. But with the mechanical world picture, the situation was reversed: organic things were thought of along the lines of inorganic things. Everything, organic and inorganic, did what it did because it was caused by something else, in accordance with principles that could be precisely, mathematically formulated. René Descartes (1596–1650) was famous for holding that non-human animals are machines, lacking any consciousness or mentality: he thought that the behaviour of animals could be explained entirely mechanically. And as the mechanical world picture developed, the watch, rather than the animal, became a dominant metaphor. As Julien de La Mettrie, an eighteenth-century pioneer of the mechanical view of the mind, wrote: ‘the body is but a watch . . . man is but a collection of springs which wind each other up’.

So it’s not surprising that, until the middle of this century, one great mystery for the mechanical world picture was the nature of life itself. It was assumed by many that there was in principle a mechanical explanation of life to be found – Thomas Hobbes had confidently asserted in 1651 that ‘life is but a motion of limbs’ – the only problem was finding it. Gradually, more and more was discovered about how life was a purely mechanical process, culminating in the discovery of the structure of DNA by Watson and Crick in 1953. Now, it seems, the ability of organisms to reproduce themselves can be explained, in principle, in chemical terms. The organic can be explained in terms of the inorganic.
The mind

Where did this leave the mind? Though he was perfectly willing to regard animals as mere machines, Descartes did not do the same for the human mind: although he did think that the mind (or soul) has effects in the physical world, he placed it outside the mechanical universe of matter. But many mechanistic philosophers in later centuries could not accept this particular view of Descartes’s, and so they faced their biggest challenge in accounting for the place of the mind in nature. The one remaining mystery for the mechanical world picture was the explanation of the mind in mechanical terms.

As with the mechanical explanation of life, it was assumed by many that there was going to be such an explanation of mind. Particularly good examples of this view are found in the slogans of eighteenth- and nineteenth-century materialists: La Mettrie’s splendid remark ‘the brain has muscles for thinking as the legs have muscles for walking’, or the physiologist Karl Vogt’s slogan that ‘the brain secretes thought just as the liver secretes bile’. But these are, of course, materialist manifestos rather than theories.

So what would a mechanical explanation of the mind be like? One influential idea in the philosophy of the last forty years is that to explain the mind would involve showing that it is really just matter. Mental states really are just chemical states of the brain. This materialist (or ‘physicalist’) view normally depends on the assumption that to explain something fully is ultimately to explain it in terms of physical science (more will be said about this view in Chapter 6). That is, sciences other than physics must have their scientific credentials vindicated by physics – all sciences must be reducible to physics. Standardly, what this means is that the contents of sciences other than physics must be deducible or derivable from physics (plus ‘bridge’ principles linking physical concepts to non-physical concepts) and that, therefore, everything that is explicable by any science is explicable in terms of physics. This is the view – sometimes known as ‘reductionism’ – which lies behind Rutherford’s memorable quip that ‘there is physics; and there is stamp-collecting’.⁶
This extreme reductionism is really very implausible, and it is very doubtful whether scientific practice actually conforms to it. Very few non-physical sciences have actually been reduced to physics in this sense, and there seems little prospect that science in the future will aim to reduce all sciences to physics. If anything, science seems to be becoming more diversified rather than more unified. For this reason (and others) I think we can distinguish between the general idea that the mind can be mechanically explained (or causally explained in terms of some science or other) and the more extreme reductionist thesis. One could believe that there can be a science of the mind without believing that this science has to reduce to physics. This will be a guiding assumption of this book – though I do not pretend to have argued for it here.

My own view, which I try to defend in this book, is that a mechanical explanation of the mind must demonstrate (at the very least) how the mind is part of the world of causes and effects – part of what philosophers call the ‘causal order’ or the world. Another thing which a mechanical explanation of the mind must do is give the details of generalisations which describe causal regularities in the mind. In other words, a mechanical explanation of the mind is committed to the existence of natural laws of psychology. Just as physics finds out about the laws which govern the non-mental world, so psychology finds out about the laws which govern the mind: there can be a natural science of the mind.

Yet while this view is embraced by most philosophers of mind in its broad outlines, its application to many of the phenomena of mind is deeply problematic. Two kinds of phenomenon stand out as obstacles to the mechanical view of mind: the phenomenon of consciousness and the phenomenon of thought. Hence, recent philosophy of mind’s preoccupation with two questions: first, how can a mere mechanism be conscious?; and, second, how can a mere mechanism think about and represent things? The central theme of this book is that generated by the second question: the problem of thought and mental representation. Thus, Chapters 1–5 are largely concerned with this problem. But a full treatment of the mechanical mind also needs to say something about the problem of conscious-
Introduction

ness: no mechanical theory of the mind which failed to address this most fundamental mental phenomenon could be regarded as a complete theory of the mind. This is the subject matter of Chapter 6.
When NASA sent the Pioneer 10 space probe to explore the solar system in 1972, they placed on board a metal plate, engraved with various pictures and signs. On one part of the plate was a diagram of a hydrogen atom, while on another was a diagram of the relative sizes of the planets in our solar system, indicating the planet from which Pioneer 10 came. The largest picture on the plate was a line drawing of a naked man and a naked woman, with the man’s right hand raised in greeting. The idea behind this was that when Pioneer 10 eventually left the solar system it would pursue an aimless journey through space, perhaps to be discovered in millions of years time by some alien life form. And perhaps these aliens would be intelligent, and would be able to understand the diagrams, recognise the extent of our scientific knowledge, and come to realise that our intentions towards them, whoever they may be, are peaceful.

It seems to me that there is something very humorous about this story. Suppose that Pioneer 10 were to reach some distant star. And suppose that the star had a planet with conditions that could sustain life. And suppose that some of the life forms on this planet were intelligent and had some sort of sense organs with which they could perceive the plate in the spacecraft. This is all pretty unlikely. But even having made these unlikely suppositions, doesn’t it seem even more unlikely that the aliens would be able to understand what the symbols on the plate mean?

Think about some of the things they would have to understand. They would have to understand that the symbols on the plate were symbols – that they were intended to stand for things, and were not just random scratches on the plate, or mere decoration. Once the aliens knew that they were symbols, they would have to understand what sort of symbols they were: for example, that the diagram of the hydrogen atom was a scientific diagram and not a picture. Then
they would have to have some idea of what sorts of things the symbols symbolised: that the drawing of the man and woman symbolised life forms rather than chemical elements, that the diagram of the solar system symbolised our part of the universe rather than the shape of the designers of the spacecraft. And – perhaps most absurd of all – even if they did figure out what the drawings of the man and woman were, they would have to recognise that the raised hand was a sign of peaceful greeting rather than of aggression, impatience or contempt, or simply that it was the normal position of this part of the body.

When you consider all this, doesn’t it seem even more unlikely that the imagined aliens would understand the symbols than that the spaceship would arrive at a planet with intelligent life in the first place?

One thing this story illustrates, I think, is something about the philosophical problem or puzzle of representation. The drawings and symbols on the plate represent things – atoms, human beings, the solar system – but the story suggests that there is something puzzling about how they do this. For when we imagine ourselves into the position of the aliens, we realise that we can’t tell what these symbols represent just by looking at them. No amount of scrutiny of the marks on the plate can reveal that these marks stand for a man, and these marks stand for a woman, and these other marks stand for a hydrogen atom. The marks on the plate can be understood in many ways, but it seems that nothing in the marks themselves tells us how to understand them. Ludwig Wittgenstein, whose philosophy was dominated by questions about representation, expressed it succinctly: ‘Each sign by itself seems dead; what gives it life?’

The philosophical puzzle about representation can be put simply: how is it possible for one thing to represent something else? Put like this, the question may seem a little obscure, and it may be hard to see exactly what is puzzling about it. One reason for this is that representation is such a familiar fact of our lives. Spoken and written words, pictures, symbols, gestures, facial expressions can all be seen as representations, and form the fabric of our everyday life. It is only when we start reflecting on things like the Pioneer 10 story that
The puzzle of representation

we begin to see how puzzling representation really is. Our words, pictures, expressions and so on represent, stand for, signify or mean things – but how?

On the one hand, representation comes naturally to us. When we talk to each other, or look at a picture, what is represented is often immediate, and not something we have to figure out. But, on the other hand, words and pictures are just physical patterns: vibrations in the air, marks on paper, stone, plastic, film or (as in Pioneer 10) metal plates. Take the example of words. It is a truism that there is nothing about the physical patterns of words themselves which makes them represent what they do. Children sometimes become familiar with this fact when they repeat words to themselves over and over until they seem to ‘lose’ their meaning. Anyone who has learned a foreign language will recognise that, however natural it seems in the case of our own language, words do not have their meaning *in and of themselves*. Or as philosophers put it: they do not have their meaning ‘intrinsically’.

On the one hand, then, representation seems natural, spontaneous and unproblematic. But, on the other hand, representation seems unnatural, contrived and mysterious. As with the concepts of time, truth and existence (for example) the concept of representation presents a puzzle characteristic of philosophy: what seems a natural and obvious aspect of our lives becomes, on reflection, deeply mysterious.

This philosophical problem of representation is one main theme of this book. It is one of the central problems of current philosophy of mind. And many other philosophical issues cluster around this problem: the place of the mind in nature, the relation between thought and language, the nature of our understanding of one another, the problem of consciousness and the possibility of thinking machines. All these issues will be touched on here. The aim of this chapter is to sharpen our understanding of the problem of representation by showing how certain apparently obvious solutions to it only lead to further problems.
The idea of representation

I’ll start by saying some very general things about the idea of representation. Let’s not be afraid to state the obvious: a representation is something that represents something. I don’t say that a representation is something that represents something else, because a representation can represent itself. (To take a philosophically famous example, the ‘Liar Paradox’ sentence ‘This sentence is false’ represents the quoted sentence itself.) But the normal case is where one thing – the representation itself – represents another thing – what we might call the object of representation. We can therefore ask two questions: one about the nature of representations and one about the nature of objects of representation.

What sorts of things can be representations? I have already mentioned words and pictures, which are perhaps the most obvious examples. But, of course, there are many other kinds. The diagram of the hydrogen atom on Pioneer 10’s plate is neither a bunch of words nor a picture, but it represents the hydrogen atom. Numerals, such as 15, 23, 1001, etc., represent numbers. Numerals can represent other things too: for example, a numeral can represent an object’s length (in metres or in feet) and a triple of numerals can represent a particular shade of colour by representing its degree of hue, saturation and brightness. The data structures in a computer can represent text or numbers or images. The rings of a tree can represent its age. A flag can represent a nation. A political demonstration can represent aggression. A piece of music can represent a mood of unbearable melancholy. Flowers can represent grief. A glance or a facial expression can represent irritation. And, as we shall see, a state of mind – a belief, a hope, a desire or a wish – can represent almost anything at all.

There are so many kinds of things that can be representations that it would take more than one book to discuss them all. And, of course, I shall not try to do this. I shall focus on simple examples of representation in language and in thought. For instance, I will talk about how it is that I can use a word to represent a particular person, or how I can think (say) about a dog. I’ll focus on these simple
The puzzle of representation

examples because the philosophical problems about representation arise even in the simplest cases. Introducing the more complex cases – such as how a piece of music can represent a mood – will at this stage only make the issue more difficult and mind-boggling than it is already. But to ignore these complex cases does not mean that I think they are unimportant or uninteresting.9

Now to our second question: what sorts of things can be objects of representation? The answer is, obviously, almost anything. Words and pictures can represent a physical object, such as a person or a house. They can represent a feature or property of a physical object, for example the shape of a person or the colour of a house. Sentences, like the sentence ‘Someone is in my house’, can represent what we might call facts, situations or states of affairs: in this case, the fact that someone is in my house. Non-physical objects can be represented too: if there are numbers, they are plainly not physical objects (where in the physical world is the number 3?). Representations – such as words, pictures, music and facial expressions – can represent moods, feelings and emotions. And representations can represent things that do not exist. I can think about – that is, represent – unicorns, dragons and the greatest prime number. None of these things exist; but they can all be ‘objects’ of representation.

This last example indicates one curious feature of representation. On the face of it, the expression ‘X represents Y’ suggests that representation is a relation between two things. But a relation between two things normally implies that those two things exist. Take the relation of kissing: if I kiss Santa Claus, then Santa Claus and I must both exist. And the fact that Santa Claus does not exist explains why I cannot kiss him.

But this isn’t true of representation: if I think about Santa Claus, and therefore represent him, it doesn’t follow that Santa Claus exists. The non-existence of Santa Claus is no obstacle to my representing him, as it was to my kissing him. In this way, representation seems very different from other relations. As we shall see later on, many philosophers have taken this aspect of representation to be central to its nature.
The puzzle of representation

So there are many kinds of representations, and many kinds of things which can be the objects of representation. How can we make any progress in understanding representation? There are two sorts of question we can ask:

First, we can ask how some particular kind of representation – pictures, words or whatever – manages to represent. What we want to know is what it is about this kind of representation that makes it play its representing role. (As an illustration, I consider below the idea that pictures might represent things by resembling them.) Obviously, we will not assume that the story told about one form of representation will necessarily apply to all other forms: the way that pictures represent will not be the same as the way that music represents, for example.

Second, we can ask whether some particular form of representation is more basic or fundamental than the others. That is, can we explain certain kinds of representation in terms of other kinds. For example: an issue in current philosophy is whether we can explain the way language represents in terms of the representational powers of states of mind, or whether we need to explain mental representation in terms of language. If there is one kind of representation that is more fundamental than the other kinds, then we are clearly on our way to understanding representation as a whole.

My own view is that mental representation – the representation of the world by states of mind – is the most fundamental form of representation. To see how this might be a reasonable view, we need to look briefly at pictorial and linguistic representation.

Pictures and resemblance

On the face of it, the way that pictures represent seems to be more straightforward than other forms of representation. For, while there is nothing intrinsic to the word ‘dog’ that makes it represent dogs, surely there is something intrinsic to a picture of a dog that makes it represent a dog – that is, what the picture looks like. Pictures of dogs look something like dogs – they resemble dogs in some way, and they do so because of their intrinsic features: their shape, colour
The puzzle of representation

and so on. Perhaps, then, a picture represents what it does because it resembles that thing.

The idea that a picture represents by resembling would be an answer to the first kind of question mentioned above: how does a particular kind of representation manage to represent? The answer is: pictures represent things by resembling those things. (This answer could then be used as a basis for an answer to the second question: the suggestion will be that all other forms of representation can be explained in terms of pictorial representation. But as we shall see below, this idea is hopeless.) Let’s call this idea the ‘resemblance theory of pictorial representation’, or the ‘resemblance theory’ for short. To discuss the resemblance theory more precisely, we need a little basic philosophical terminology.

Philosophers distinguish between two ways in which the truth of one claim can depend on the truth of another. They call these two ways ‘necessary’ and ‘sufficient’ conditions. To say that a particular claim, A, is a necessary condition for some other claim, B, is to say this: B is true only if A is true too. Intuitively, B will not be true without A being true, so the truth of A is necessary (i.e. needed, required) for the truth of B.

To say that A is a sufficient condition for B is to say this: if A is true, then B is true too. Intuitively, the truth of A ensures the truth of B – or, in other words, the truth of A suffices for the truth of B. To say that A is a necessary and sufficient condition for the truth of B is to say this: if A is true, B is true, and if B is true, A is true. (This is sometimes expressed as ‘A is true if and only if B is true’, and ‘if and only if’ is sometimes abbreviated to ‘iff’.)

Let’s illustrate this distinction with an example. If I am in London, then I am in England. So being in England is a necessary condition for being in London: I just can’t be in London without being in England. Likewise, being in London is a sufficient condition for being in England: being in London will suffice for being in England. But being in London is clearly not a necessary condition for being in England, as there are many ways one can be in England without being in London. For the same reason, being in England is not a sufficient condition for being in London.
The puzzle of representation

The resemblance theory takes pictorial representation to depend on the resemblance between the picture and what it represents. Let’s express this dependence more precisely in terms of necessary and sufficient conditions: a picture (call it P) represents something (call it X) if and only if P resembles X. That is, a resemblance between P and X is both necessary and sufficient for P to represent X.

This way of putting the resemblance theory is certainly more precise than our initial vague formulation. But, unfortunately, expressing it in this more precise way only shows its problems. Let’s take the idea that resemblance might be a sufficient condition for pictorial representation first.

To say that resemblance is sufficient for representation is to say this: if X resembles Y, then X represents Y. The first thing that should strike us is that ‘resembles’ is somewhat vague. For, in one sense, almost everything resembles everything else. This is the sense in which resembling something is just having some feature in common with that thing. So, in this sense, not only do I resemble my father and my mother, because I look like them, but I also resemble my desk – my desk and I are both physical objects – and the number 3 – the number 3 and I are both objects of one kind or another. But I am not a representation of any of these things.

Perhaps we need to narrow down the ways or respects in which something resembles something else if we want resemblance to be the basis of representation. But notice that it does not help if we say that, if X resembles Y in some respect, then X represents Y. For I resemble my father in certain respects – say, character traits – but this does not make me a representation of him. And, obviously, we do not want to add that X must resemble Y in those respects in which X represents Y, as this would make the resemblance theory circular and uninformative: if X resembles Y in those respects in which X represents Y, then X represents Y. This may be true, but it can hardly be an analysis of the notion of representation.

There is a further problem with resemblance as a sufficient condition. Suppose we specify certain respects in which something resembles something else: a picture of Napoleon, for example, might resemble Napoleon in the facial expression, the proportions of the
The puzzle of representation

body, the characteristic position of the arm, and so on. But it seems to be an obvious fact about resemblance that, if X resembles Y, then Y resembles X. (Philosophers put this by saying that resemblance is a *symmetrical* relation.) If I resemble my father in certain respects, then my father resembles me in certain respects. But this doesn’t carry over to representation. If the picture resembles Napoleon, then Napoleon resembles the picture. But Napoleon does not represent the picture. So resemblance cannot be sufficient for pictorial representation if we are to avoid making every pictured object itself a pictorial representation of its picture.

Finally, we should consider the obvious fact that everything resembles itself. (Philosophers put this by saying that resemblance is a *reflexive* relation.) If resemblance is supposed to be a sufficient condition for representation, then it follows that everything represents itself. But this is absurd. We should not be happy with a theory of pictorial representation that turns *everything* into a picture of itself. This completely trivialises the idea of pictorial representation.

So the idea that resemblance might be a sufficient condition of pictorial representation is hopeless.¹⁰ Does this mean that the resemblance theory fails? Not yet: for the resemblance theory could say that, although resemblance is not a sufficient condition, it is a necessary condition. That is, if a picture P represents X, then P will resemble X in certain respects – though not vice versa. What should we make of this suggestion?

On the face of it, it seems very plausible. If a portrait represents the Queen, then surely it must resemble her in some respect. After all, that may be what it is for a portrait to be a ‘good likeness’. But there are problems with this idea too. For a picture can certainly represent something without resembling it very much. A lot of twentieth-century art is representational; but this is not to say that it is based on resemblance (consider cubist pictures). Caricatures and schematic drawings, like stick figures, often have very little resemblance in common with the things they represent. Yet we often have no trouble in recognising what it is they represent. A caricature of the Queen may resemble her a lot less than a detailed drawing of someone else. Yet the caricature is still a picture of the Queen.¹¹
So how much resemblance is needed for the necessary condition of representation to be met? Perhaps it could be answered that all that is needed is that there is some resemblance, however loose, between the picture and what it represents. Perhaps resemblance can be taken loosely enough to incorporate the representation involved in cubist pictures. This is fine; but now the idea of resemblance is not doing as much work in the theory as it previously was. If a schematic picture (say, of the sort used by certain corporations in their logos) need resemble the thing it represents only in a very minimal way, then it is hard to see how much is explained by saying that ‘if a picture represents X, it must resemble X’. So even when a picture does resemble what it represents, there must be factors other than resemblance which enter into the representation and make it possible.

I am not denying that pictures often do resemble what they represent. Obviously they do, and this may be part of what makes them pictures at all (as opposed to sentences, graphs or diagrams). All I am questioning is whether the idea of resemblance can explain very much about how pictures represent. The idea that resemblance is a necessary condition of pictorial representation may well be true; but the question is ‘What else makes a picture represent what it does?’

One point that needs to be emphasised here is that pictures often need interpretation. For example, in Michelangelo’s *The Last Judgment*, in the Sistine Chapel, we see the souls in hell struggling in agony as they meet their final end, with the monumental figure of Christ above them raising his hand in judgement. Why don’t we see the souls being welcomed out of the depths by the benevolent Christ, with his hand raised in friendly encouragement – ‘hey, come on up, it’s cooler here’? (Remember the picture on Pioneer 10’s metal plate of the hand raised in greeting.) Well, we could; but we don’t. The reason is that we see the picture in the light of certain assumptions we make about it – what we could vaguely call the ‘context’ of the picture. We know that the picture is a picture of the last judgement, and that in the last judgement some souls were sentenced to eternal damnation, with Christ as the judge, and so on. This is part of why we see the picture in the way we do: we interpret it.
The puzzle of representation

We can make the point with an example of Wittgenstein's. Imagine a drawing of a man with a stick walking up a slope (see Figure 1.1). What makes this a picture of a man walking up a slope, rather than a man sliding gently down a slope? Nothing in the picture. It is because of what we are used to in our everyday experience, and the sort of context in which we are used to seeing such pictures, that we see the picture one way rather than another. We have to interpret the picture in the light of this context – the picture does not interpret itself.

I am not going to pursue the resemblance theory or the interpretation of pictures any further. I mention it here to illustrate how little the idea of resemblance tells us about pictorial representation. What I want to do now is to briefly consider the second question I raised at the end of the last section, and apply it to pictorial representation. We could put the question like this: suppose that we had a complete theory of pictorial representation. Would it then be possible for all other forms of representation to be explained in terms of pictorial representation?

The answer to this is 'No', for a number of reasons. One reason we have already glanced at: pictures often need to be interpreted, and it won't help to say that the interpretation should be another picture,
The puzzle of representation

because that might need interpreting too. But, although the answer is ‘No’, we can learn something about the nature of representation by learning about the limitations of pictorial representation.

A simple example can illustrate the point. Suppose I say to you ‘If it doesn’t rain this afternoon, we will go for a walk’ This is a fairly simple sentence – a linguistic representation. But suppose we want to explain all representation in terms of pictorial representation; we would need to be able to express this linguistic representation in terms of pictures. How could we do this?

Well, perhaps we could draw a picture of a non-rainy scene with you and me walking in it. But how do we picture the idea of ‘this afternoon’? We can’t put a clock in the picture: remember, we are trying to reduce all representation to pictures, and a clock does not represent the time by picturing it. (The idea of ‘picturing’ time, in fact, makes little sense.)

And there is a further reason why this first picture cannot be right: it is just a picture of you and me walking in a rain-free area. What we wanted to express was a particular combination and relationship between two ideas: first, it’s not raining, and, second, you and me going for a walk. So perhaps we should draw two pictures: one of the rain-free scene and one of you and me walking. But this can’t be right either: for how can this pair of pictures express the idea that if it doesn’t rain, then we will go for a walk? Why shouldn’t the two pictures be taken as simply representing a non-rainy scene and you and me going for a walk? Or why doesn’t it represent the idea that either we will go for a walk or it won’t rain? When we try to represent the difference between . . . and . . . , if . . . then . . . , and either . . . or . . . in pictures, we draw a complete blank. There just seems no way of doing it.

One important thing that pictures cannot do, then, is represent certain sorts of relations between ideas. They cannot represent, for example, those relations which we express using the words if . . . then . . . , . . . and . . . , either . . . or and not. (Why not? Well, the picture of the non-rainy scene may equally be a picture of a sunny scene – how can we pictorially express the idea that the scene is a scene where there is no rain? Perhaps by drawing rain and putting a
cross through it – as in a ‘No Smoking’ sign – but again we are using something that is not a picture: the cross.) For this reason at least, it is impossible to explain or reduce other forms of representation to pictorial representation.

Linguistic representation

A picture may sometimes be worth a thousand words, but a thousand pictures cannot represent some of the things we can represent using words and sentences. So how can we represent things using words and sentences?

A natural idea is this: ‘words don’t represent things in any natural way; rather, they represent by convention. There is a convention among speakers of a language that the words they use will mean the same thing to one another; when speakers agree or converge in their conventions, they will succeed in communicating; when they don’t, they won’t’.14

It is hard to deny that what words represent is at least partly a matter of convention. But what is the convention, exactly? Consider the English word ‘dog’. Is the idea that there is a convention among English speakers to use the word ‘dog’ to represent dogs, and only dogs (so long as they are intending to speak literally, and to speak the truth)? If so, then it is hard to see how the convention can explain representation, as we stated the convention as a ‘convention to use the word “dog” to represent dogs’. As the convention is stated by using the idea of representation, it takes it for granted: it cannot explain it. (Again, my point is not that convention is not involved in linguistic representation; the question is rather what the appeal to convention can explain on its own.)

An equally natural thought is that words represent by being conventionally linked to the ideas that thinkers intend to express by using those words. The word ‘dog’ expresses the idea of a dog, by means of a convention that links the word to the idea. This theory has a distinguished philosophical history: something like it goes back at least as far as Thomas Hobbes (1588–1679), and especially to John Locke (1632–1704), who summed up the view by saying that words are the ‘sensible marks of ideas’.15
The puzzle of representation

What are ideas? Some philosophers have held that they are something like mental images, pictures in the mind. So when I use the word ‘dog’, this is correlated with a mental image in my mind of a dog. A convention associates the word ‘dog’ with the idea in my mind, and it is in virtue of this association that the word represents dogs.

There are many problems with this theory. For one thing, is the image in my mind an image of a particular dog, say Fido? But, if so, why suppose that the word ‘dog’ means dog, rather than Fido? In addition, it is hard to imagine what an image of ‘dogness’ in general would be like. And even if the mental image theory of ideas can in some way account for this problem, it will encounter the problem mentioned at the end of the last section. Although many words can be associated with mental images, many can’t: this was the problem that we had in trying to explain and, or, not and if in terms of pictures.

However, perhaps not all ideas are mental images – often we think in words, for example, and not in pictures at all. If so, the criticisms in the last two paragraphs miss the mark. So let’s put to one side the theory that ideas are mental images, and let’s just consider the claim that words represent by expressing ideas – whatever ideas may turn out to be.

This theory does not appeal to a ‘convention to represent dogs’, so it is not vulnerable to the same criticism as the previous theory. But it cannot, of course, explain representation, because it appeals to ideas, and what are ideas but another form of representation? A dog-idea represents dogs just as much as the word ‘dog’ does; so we are in effect appealing to one kind of representation (the idea) to explain another kind (the word). This is fine, but if we want to explain representation in general then we also need to explain how ideas represent.

Perhaps you will think that this is asking too much. Perhaps we do not need to explain how ideas represent. If we explain how words represent by associating them with ideas, and explain too how pictures are interpreted in terms of the ideas that people associate with them in their minds, perhaps we can stop there. After all, we can’t
The puzzle of representation

explain everything: we have to take something for granted. So why not take the representational powers of ideas for granted?

I think this is unsatisfactory. If we are content to take the representational powers of the mind for granted, then why not step back and take the representational powers of language for granted? For it’s not as if the mind is better understood than language – in fact, in philosophy, the reverse is probably true. Ideas, thoughts and mental phenomena generally seem even more mysterious than words and pictures. So, if anything, this should suggest that we should explain ideas in terms of language, rather than vice versa. But I don’t think we can do this. So we need to explain the representational nature of ideas.

Before moving on to discuss ideas and mental representation, I should be very clear about what I am saying about linguistic representation. I am not saying that the notions I mentioned – of convention, or of words expressing ideas – are the only options for a theory of language. Not at all. I introduced them only as illustrations of how a theory of linguistic representation will need, ultimately, to appeal to a theory of mental representation. Some theories of language will deny this, but I shall ignore those theories here.17

The upshot of this discussion is that words, like pictures, do not represent in themselves (‘intrinsically’). They need interpreting – they need an interpretation assigned to them in some way. But how can we explain this? The natural answer, I think, is that interpretation is something which the mind bestows upon words. Words and pictures gain the interpretations they do, and therefore represent what they do, because of the states of mind of those who use them. But these states of mind are representational too. So to understand linguistic and pictorial representation fully, we have to understand mental representation.

Mental representation

So how does the mind represent anything? Let’s make this question a little easier to handle by asking how individual states of mind represent anything. By a ‘state of mind’, or ‘mental state’, here I mean
The puzzle of representation

something like a belief, a desire, a hope, a wish, a fear, a hunch, an expectation, an intention, a perception and so on. I think that all of these are states of mind which represent the world in some way. This will need a little explaining.

When I say that hopes, beliefs, desires and so on represent the world, I mean that every hope, belief or desire is directed at something. If you hope, you must hope for something; if you believe, you must believe something; if you desire, you must desire something. It does not make sense to suppose that a person could simply hope, without hoping for anything; believe, without believing anything; or desire, without desiring anything. What you believe or desire is what is represented by your belief or desire.

We will need a convenient general term for states of mind which represent the world, or an aspect of the world. I shall use the term ‘thought’, as it seems the most general and neutral term belonging to the everyday mental vocabulary. From now on in this book, I will use the term ‘thought’ to refer to all representational mental states. So states of belief, desire, hope, love and so on are all thoughts in my sense, as they all represent things. (Whether all mental states are thoughts in this sense is a question I shall leave until the end of the chapter.)

What can we say in general about how thoughts represent? I shall start with thoughts which are of particular philosophical interest: those thoughts which represent (or are about) situations. When I hope that there will be bouillabaisse on the menu at my favourite restaurant tonight, I am thinking about a number of things: bouillabaisse, the menu, my favourite restaurant, tonight. But I am not just thinking about these things in a random or disconnected way: I am thinking about a certain possible fact or situation: the situation in which bouillabaisse is on the menu at my favourite restaurant tonight. It is a harmless variant on this to say that my state of hope represents this situation.

However, consider a different thought I might have: the belief that there is bouillabaisse on the menu tonight. This mental state does not represent the situation in quite the same sense in which the hope does. When I believe that there is bouillabaisse on the menu
The puzzle of representation

tonight (perhaps because I have walked past the restaurant and read the menu), I take the situation in question to be the case: I take it as a fact about the world that there is bouillabaisse on the menu tonight. But, when I hope, I do not take it to be a fact about the world; rather, I would like it to be a fact that there is bouillabaisse on the menu tonight.

So there are two aspects to these thoughts: there is the ‘situation’ represented and there is what we could call (for want of a better word) the attitude which we take to the situation. The idea of different attitudes to situations is best illustrated by examples.

Consider the situation in which I visit Budapest. I can expect that I will visit Budapest; I can hope that I will visit Budapest; and I can believe that I have visited Budapest. All these thoughts are about, or represent, the same situation – me visiting Budapest – but the attitudes taken to this situation are very different. The question therefore arises over what makes these different attitudes different; but for the moment I am only concerned to distinguish the situation represented from the attitude taken to it.

Just as the same situation can be subject to different attitudes, so the same kind of attitude can be concerned with many different situations. I actually believe that I will visit Budapest soon, and I also believe that my favourite restaurant does not have bouillabaisse on the menu tonight, and I believe countless other things. Beliefs, hopes and thoughts like them can therefore be uniquely picked out by specifying:

(a) the attitude in question (belief, hope, expectation etc.);
(b) the situation represented.

(It should also be noted in passing that many attitudes come in degrees: one can want something more or less strongly; and believe something with more or less conviction; but this complication does not affect the general picture.) In general, we can describe these kinds of thoughts schematically as follows. Where ‘A’ stands for the person who is in the mental state, ‘ψ’ stands for the attitude (the Greek letter psi – for ‘psychological’) and ‘S’ stands for the situation represented, the best description will be of the following form:
The puzzle of representation

A ψs that S

For example, Vladimir (A) believes (ψs) that it is raining (S); Renata (A) hopes (ψs) that she will visit Romania (S) – and so on.

Bertrand Russell (1872–1970) called thoughts that can be picked out in this way ‘propositional attitudes’ – and the label has stuck. Though it might seem rather obscure at first glance, the term ‘propositional attitude’ describes the structure of these mental states quite well. I have already explained the term ‘attitude’. What Russell meant by ‘proposition’ is something like what I am calling ‘situation’: it is what you have your attitude towards (so a proposition in this sense is not a piece of language). A propositional attitude is therefore any mental state which can be described in the ‘A ψs that S’ style.

Another piece of terminology that has been almost universally adopted is the term ‘content’, used where Russell used ‘proposition’. According to this terminology, when I believe that there is beer in the fridge, the content of my belief is that there is beer in the fridge. And likewise with desires, hopes and so on – these are different attitudes, but they all have ‘content’. What exactly ‘content’ is, and what it is for a mental state to have ‘content’ (or ‘representational content’), are questions that will recur throughout the rest of this book – especially in Chapter 5. In current philosophy, the problem of mental representation is often expressed as: ‘What is it for a mental state to have content?’ For the time being, we can think of the content of a mental state as what distinguishes states involving the same attitude from one another. Different beliefs are distinguished from one another (or, in philosophical terminology, ‘individuated’) by their different contents. So are desires; and so on with all the attitudes.

I have concentrated on the idea of a propositional attitude, because thoughts of this form will become quite important in the next chapter. But although all propositional attitudes are thoughts (by definition) it is important to stress that not all thoughts (in my sense) are propositional attitudes – that is, not all representational mental states can be characterised in terms of attitudes to situations. Take love, for instance. Love is a representational mental state: you cannot love without loving something or someone. But love is not
The puzzle of representation

(always) an attitude to a situation – love can be an attitude to a person, a place or a thing. Love cannot be described in the ‘A ψ that S’ style (try it and see). In my terminology then, love is a kind of thought, but not a propositional attitude.¹⁹

Another interesting example is desire. Is this an attitude to a situation? On the face of it, it isn’t. Suppose I desire a cup of coffee: my desire is for a thing, a cup of coffee, not for any situation. On the surface, then, desire resembles love. But many philosophers think that this is misleading, and that it under-describes a desire to treat it as an attitude to a thing. The reason is that a more accurate description of the desire is that it is a desire that a certain situation obtains: the situation in which I have a cup of coffee. All desires, it is claimed, are really desires that so-and-so – where ‘so-and-so’ is a specification of a situation. Desire, unlike love, is a propositional attitude.

Now, by calling representational mental states ‘thoughts’ I do not mean to imply that these states are necessarily conscious. Suppose Oedipus really does desire to kill his father and marry his mother. Then, by the criterion outlined above (A ψ that S), these desires count as propositional attitudes and therefore thoughts. But they are not conscious thoughts.

It might seem strange to distinguish between thought and consciousness in this way. To justify the distinction, we need a brief preliminary digression into the murky topic of consciousness; a full treatment of this subject will have to wait until Chapter 6.

Thought and consciousness

Consciousness is what makes our waking lives seem the way they do, and is arguably the ultimate source of all value in the world: ‘without this inner illumination’, Einstein said to the philosopher Hebert Feigl, ‘the universe would be nothing but a heap of dirt’.²⁰ But, despite the importance of consciousness, I want to distinguish certain questions about thought from questions about consciousness. To a certain extent, these questions are independent of one another.
The puzzle of representation

As I say, this may seem a little strange. After all, for many people, the terms ‘thought’ and ‘consciousness’ are practically synonymous. Surely thinking is being aware of the world, being conscious of things in and outside oneself – how then can we understand thought without also understanding consciousness? (Some people even think of the terms ‘conscious’ and ‘mental’ as synonymous – for them the point is even more obvious.)

The reason for distinguishing thought and consciousness is very simple. Many of our thoughts are conscious, but not all of them are. Some of the things we think are unconscious. So, if thought can still be thought while not being conscious, then it cannot in general be essential to something’s being a thought that it is conscious. It ought therefore to be possible to explain what makes thought what it is without having to explain consciousness.

What do I mean when I say that some thought is unconscious? Simply this: there are things we think, but we are not aware that we think them. Let me give a few examples, some more controversial than others.

I would be willing to bet that you think the President of the United States normally wears socks. If I asked you ‘Does the President of the United States normally wear socks?’ I think you would answer ‘Yes’. And what people say is pretty good evidence for what they think: so I would take your answer as good evidence for the fact that you think that the President of the United States normally wears socks. But I would also guess that the words ‘the President of the United States normally wears socks’ had never consciously occurred to you before; you have never been aware of thinking it. And yet, when asked, you seem to reveal that you do think it is true. Did you only start thinking this when I asked you? Can it really be right to say that you had no opinion on this matter before I asked you? (’Hm, that’s an interesting question, I had never given this any thought before, I wonder what the answer is . . . .’ ) Doesn’t it make more sense to say that the unconscious thought was there all along?

This example might seem pretty trivial, so let’s try a more
The puzzle of representation

significant (and controversial) one. In Plato’s dialogue, *Meno*, Socrates is trying to defend his theory that all knowledge is recollection of truths known in the previous life of the soul. To persuade his interlocutor (Meno) of this, Socrates questions one of Meno’s slaves about a simple piece of geometry: if the area of a square with sides $N$ units long is a certain number of units, what is the area of a square with sides $2 \times N$ units long? Under simple questioning (which does not give anything away) Meno’s slave eventually gets the correct answer. The dialogue continues:

*Socrates*: What do you think, Meno? Has he answered with any opinions that were not his own?

*Meno*: No, they were all his.

*Socrates*: Yet he did not know, as we agreed a few minutes ago.

*Meno*: True.

*Socrates*: But these opinions were somewhere in him, were they not?

*Meno*: Yes.\(^{21}\)

Socrates, then, argues that knowledge is recollection, but this is not the view that interests me here. What interests me is the idea that one can have a kind of ‘knowledge’ of (say) certain mathematical principles ‘somewhere’ in one without being explicitly conscious of them. This sort of knowledge can be ‘recovered’ (to use Socrates’s word) and made explicit, but it can also lie within someone’s mind without ever being recovered. Knowledge involves thinking of something; it is a kind of thought. So if there can be unconscious knowledge, there can be unconscious thought.

There are some terminological difficulties in talking about ‘unconscious thoughts’. For some people, thoughts are episodes in the conscious mind, so they must be conscious by definition. Certainly, many philosophers have thought that consciousness was essential to all mental states, and therefore to thoughts. Descartes was one – to him the idea of an unconscious thought would have been a contradiction in terms. And some today agree with him.\(^{22}\)

However, I think that these days many more philosophers (and
The puzzle of representation

non-philosophers too) are prepared to take very seriously the idea of an unconscious thought. One influence here is Freud’s contribution to the modern conception of the mind. Freud recognised that many of the things that we do cannot be fully accounted for by our conscious minds. What does account for these actions are our unconscious beliefs and desires, many of which are ‘buried’ so deep in our minds that we need a certain kind of therapy – psychoanalysis – to dig them out.23

Notice that we can accept this Freudian claim without accepting specific details of Freud’s theory. We can accept the idea that our actions can often be governed by unconscious beliefs and desires, without accepting many of the ideas (popularly associated with Freud’s name) about what these beliefs and desires are, and what causes them – e.g. the Oedipus complex, or ‘penis envy’. In fact, the essential idea is very close to our ordinary way of thinking about other people’s minds. We all know people whom we think do not ‘know their own minds’, or who are deceiving themselves about something. But how could they fail to be aware of their own thoughts, if thoughts are essentially conscious?

Anyway, for all these reasons, I think that there are unconscious thoughts, and I also think that we do not need to understand consciousness in order to understand thought. This doesn’t mean that I am denying that there is such a thing as conscious thought. The examples I discussed were example of thoughts which were brought to consciousness – you brought into your conscious mind the thought that the President of the United States normally wears socks, Meno’s slave brought into his conscious mind geometrical knowledge that he didn’t realise he had, and patients of psychoanalysis bring into their conscious minds thoughts and feelings that they don’t know that they have. And many of the examples I will employ throughout the book will be of conscious thoughts. But what I am interested in is what makes them thoughts, not what makes them conscious.

In his well-known book, *The Emperor’s New Mind*, the mathematician and physicist Roger Penrose claims that ‘true intelligence requires consciousness’.24 It may look as if I’m disagreeing with this remark; but actually I’m not. To say that true intelligence (or
thought) requires consciousness does not mean that to understand the nature of thought we have to understand the nature of consciousness. It just means that anything that can think must also be conscious. An analogy might help: it may be true that anything that thinks, or is intelligent, must be alive. Maybe. If so, then ‘true intelligence requires life’. But that would not by itself mean that in order to understand thought we would have to understand life. We would just have to presuppose that the things that think are also alive. Our explanation of thought would not also be an explanation of life. And similarly with consciousness. So I am not disagreeing with Penrose’s remark. But I am not agreeing with it either. I am remaining neutral on this question, because I don’t know whether there could be a creature that had thoughts, but whose thoughts were wholly unconscious. But, fortunately, I don’t need to answer this difficult question in order to pursue the themes of this book.

So much, then, for the idea that many thoughts are unconscious. It is now time to return to the idea of mental representation. What have we learned about mental representation? So far, not much. However, in describing in very general terms the notion of a thought, and in articulating the distinction between attitude and content (or situation), we have made a start. We now at least have some basic categories to work with, in posing our question about the nature of mental representation. In the next section I shall link the discussion so far with some important ideas from the philosophical tradition.

**Intentionality**

Philosophers have a technical word for the representational nature of states of mind: they call it ‘intentionality’. Those mental states which exhibit intentionality – those which represent – are sometimes therefore called ‘intentional states’. This terminology can be confusing, especially because not all philosophers use the terms in the same way. But it is necessary to consider the concept of intentionality, as it forms the starting point of most philosophers’ attempts to deal with the puzzle of representation.

The term ‘intentionality’ derives from the scholastic philosophers
of the Middle Ages, who were very interested in issues about representation. These philosophers used the term ‘intentio’ to mean concept, and the term ‘esse intentionale’ (intentional existence) was used – for example, by St Thomas Aquinas (c.1225–1274) – for the way in which the things can be conceptually represented in the mind. The term ‘intentional existence’ (or ‘inexistence’) was revived by the German philosopher Franz Brentano (1838–1917). In his book *Psychology from an Empirical Standpoint* (1874), Brentano claimed that mental phenomena are characterised:

...by what the scholastics of the Middle Ages referred to as the intentional ... inexistence of the object, and what we, although with not quite unambiguous expressions, would call relation to a content, direction upon an object (which is not here to be understood as a reality) or immanent objectivity.25

Things are simpler here than they might initially seem. The phrases ‘intentional inexistence’, ‘relation to a content’ and ‘immanent objectivity’, despite superficial differences between them, are all different ways of expressing the same idea: that mental phenomena involve representation or presentation of the world. ‘Inexistence’ is meant to express the idea that the object of a thought – what the thought is about – exists in the act of thinking itself. This is not to say that when I think about my dog there is a dog ‘in’ my mind. Rather, it is just the idea that my dog is intrinsic to my thought, in the sense that what makes it the thought that it is is the fact that it has my dog as its object.

I will start by understanding the idea of intentionality as simply as possible – as directedness on something. Contemporary philosophers often use the term ‘aboutness’ as a synonym for ‘intentionality’: thoughts have ‘aboutness’ because they are about things. (I prefer the term ‘directedness’, for reasons that will emerge in a moment.) The essence of Brentano’s claim is that what distinguishes mental phenomena from physical phenomena is that, whereas all mental phenomena exhibit this directedness, no physical phenomenon exhibits it. This claim, that intentionality is the ‘mark of the mental’, is sometimes called Brentano’s thesis.
The puzzle of representation

Before considering whether Brentano’s thesis is true, we need to clear up a couple of possible confusions about the term ‘intentionality’. The first is that the word looks as if it might have something to do with the ordinary ideas of intention, intending and acting intentionally. There is obviously a link between the philosophical idea of intentionality and the idea of intention. For one thing, if I intend to perform some action, $A$, then it is natural to think that I represent $A$ (in some sense) to myself. So intentions may be representational (and therefore ‘intentional’) states.

But, apart from these connections, there is no substantial philosophical link between the concept of intentionality and the ordinary concept of intention. Intentions in the ordinary sense are intentional states, but most intentional states have little to do with intentions.

The second possible confusion is somewhat more technical. Beginners may wish to move directly to the next section, ‘Brentano’s thesis’ (see p. 36).

This second confusion is between intentionality (in the sense I am using it here) and intensionality, a feature of certain logical and linguistic contexts. The words ‘intensionality’ and ‘intentionality’ are pronounced in the same way, which adds to the confusion, and leads painstaking authors such as John Searle to specify whether they are talking about ‘intentionality-with-a-t’ or ‘intensionality-with-an-s’. Searle is right: intentionality and intensionality are different things, and it is important to keep them apart in our minds.

To see why, we need to introduce some technical vocabulary from logic and the philosophy of language. A linguistic or logical context (i.e. a part of some language or logical calculus) is intensional when it is non-extensional. An extensional context is one of which the following principles are true:

(A) the principle of intersubstitutivity of co-referring expressions;
(B) the principle of existential generalisation.

The titles of these principles look rather formidable, but the logical ideas behind them are fairly simple. Let me explain.
The puzzle of representation

The principle (A) of intersubstitutivity of co-referring expressions is a rather complicated title for a very simple idea. The idea is just that if an object has two names, \( N \) and \( M \), and you say something true about it using \( M \), you cannot turn this truth into a falsehood by replacing \( M \) with \( N \). For example, George Orwell’s original name was Eric Arthur Blair (he took the name Orwell from the River Orwell in Suffolk). Because both names refer to the same man, you cannot change the true statement:

George Orwell wrote *Animal Farm*

into a falsehood by substituting the name Eric Arthur Blair for George Orwell. Because the statement:

Eric Arthur Blair wrote *Animal Farm*

is equally true. (Likewise, substituting Eric Arthur Blair for George Orwell cannot turn a falsehood into a truth – e.g. ‘George Orwell wrote *War and Peace*.’) The idea behind this is very simple: because the person you are talking about is the same in both cases, it doesn’t matter to the truth of what you say which words you use to talk about him.

The terms ‘George Orwell’ and ‘Eric Arthur Blair’ are ‘co-referring terms’: that is, they refer to the same object. The principle (A) says that these terms can be substituted for one another without changing the truth or falsehood of the sentence in which they occur. (It is therefore sometimes called the principle of ‘substitutivity *salva veritate*’ – literally, ‘saving truth’.)

What could be simpler? Unfortunately, we don’t have to look far for cases in which this simple principle is violated. Consider someone – call him Vladimir – who believes that George Orwell wrote *Animal Farm*, but is ignorant of Orwell’s original name. Then the statement:

Vladimir believes that George Orwell wrote *Animal Farm*

is true, while the statement:

Vladimir believes that Eric Arthur Blair wrote *Animal Farm*
The puzzle of representation

is false. Substitution of co-referring terms does not, in this case, preserve truth. Our apparently obvious principle of the substitutivity of co-referring terms has failed. Yet how can this principle fail? It seemed self-evident.

Why this principle fails in certain cases – notably in sentences about beliefs and certain other mental states – is a main concern of the philosophy of language. However, we need not dwell on the reasons for the failure here; I only want to point it out for the purposes of defining the concept of intensionality. The failure of principle (A) is one of the marks of non-extensionality, or intensionality.

The other mark is the failure of principle (B), ‘existential generalisation’. This principle says that we can infer that something exists from a statement made about it. For example, from the statement:

Orwell wrote *Animal Farm*

we can infer that:

There exists someone who wrote *Animal Farm*.

That is, if the first statement is true, then the second is true too.

Once again, a prominent example of where existential generalisation can fail is statements about beliefs. The statement

Vladimir believes that Santa Claus lives at the North Pole

can be true, while the following statement is no doubt false:

There exists someone whom Vladimir believes lives at the North Pole.

Since the first of these two statements can be true while the second is false, the second cannot logically follow from the first. This is an example of the failure of existential generalisation.

To summarise: intensionality is a feature of sentences and linguistic items; a sentence is intensional when it is non-extensional; it is non-extensional when one or both of the two principles (A) and (B) can fail to apply. Notice that I say the principles can fail to apply, not that they must. Of course, there are many cases when we can substitute co-referring expressions in belief sentences; and there are many cases where we can conclude that something exists from
The puzzle of representation

a belief sentence which is about that thing. But the point is that we have no guarantee that these principles will hold for all belief sentences and other ‘intensional contexts’.

What has this intensionality got to do with our topic, intentionality? At first sight, there is an obvious connection. The examples that we used of sentences exhibiting intensionality were sentences about beliefs. It is natural to suppose that the principle of substitutivity of co-referring terms breaks down here because whether a belief sentence is true depends not just on the object represented by the believer, but on the way that the object is represented. Vladimir represents Orwell as Orwell, and not as Blair. So the intensionality seems to be a result of the nature of the representation involved in a belief. Perhaps, then, the intensionality of belief sentences is a consequence of the intentionality of the beliefs themselves.

Likewise with the failure of existential generalisation. The failure of this principle in the case of belief sentences is perhaps a natural consequence of the fact (mentioned above) that representations can represent ‘things’ that don’t exist. The fact that we can think about things that don’t exist does seem to be one of the defining characteristics of intentionality. So, once again, perhaps, the intensionality of (for example) belief sentences is a consequence of the intentionality of the beliefs themselves.27

However, this is as far as we can go in linking the notions of intensionality and intentionality. There are two reasons why we cannot link the two notions further:

1 There can be intensionality without intentionality (representation). That is, there can be sentences which are intensional but do not have anything to do with mental representation. The best-known examples are sentences involving the notions of possibility and necessity. To say that something is necessarily so, in this sense, is to say that it could not have been otherwise. From the two true sentences,

Nine is necessarily greater than five

The number of planets is nine
We cannot infer that:

The number of planets is necessarily greater than five

since it is not necessarily true that there are nine planets. There could have been four planets, or none. So the principle of substitutivity of co-referring terms (‘nine’ and ‘the number of planets’) fails – but not because of anything to do with mental representation.\(^{28}\)

2 There can be descriptions of intentionality which do not exhibit intensionality. An example is given by sentences of the form ‘X sees Y’. Seeing is a case of intentionality, or mental representation. But, if Vladimir sees Orwell, then surely he also sees Blair, and the author of *The Road to Wigan Pier*, and so on. Principle (A) seems to apply to ‘X sees Y’. Moreover, if Vladimir sees Orwell, then surely there is someone whom he sees. So principle (B) applies to sentences of the form ‘X sees Y’\(^{29}\). Not all descriptions of intentionality are intensional; so intensionality in the description is not necessary for intentionality to be described.

This last argument, (2), is actually rather controversial, but we don’t really need it in order to distinguish intentionality from intensionality. The first argument will do that for us on its own: in the terminology of necessary and sufficient conditions introduced earlier, we can say that intensionality is not sufficient for intentionality, and it may not even be necessary. That is, since you can have intensionality without any mention of intentionality, intensionality is not sufficient for the presence of intentionality. This is enough to show that these are very different concepts, and that we cannot use intensionality as a criterion of intentionality.\(^{30}\)

Let’s now leave intensionality behind, and return to our main theme: intentionality. Our final task in this chapter is to consider Brentano’s thesis that intentionality is the ‘mark’ of the mental.

**Brentano’s thesis**

As I remarked earlier, Brentano thought that all and only mental
The puzzle of representation

phenomena exhibit intentionality. This idea, Brentano’s thesis, has been very influential in recent philosophy. But is it true?

Let’s divide the question into two sub-questions:

1. Do all mental states exhibit intentionality?
2. Do only mental states exhibit intentionality?

Again the terminology of necessary and sufficient conditions is useful. The first sub-question may be recast: is mentality sufficient for intentionality? And the second: is mentality necessary for intentionality?

It is tempting to think that the answer to the first sub-question is ‘No’. To say that all mental states exhibit intentionality is to say that all mental states are representational. But – this line of thought goes – we can know from introspection that many mental states are not representational. Suppose I have a sharp pain at the base of my spine. This pain is a mental state: it is the sort of state which only a conscious being could be in. But pains do not seem to be representational in the way that thoughts are – pains are just feelings, they are not about or ‘directed upon’ anything. Another example: suppose that you have a kind of generalised depression or misery. It may be that you are depressed without being able to say what it is that you are depressed about. Isn’t this another example of an intentional state without directedness on an object?

Let’s take the case of pain first. First, we must be clear about what we mean by saying that pain is a mental state. We sometimes call a pain ‘physical’ to distinguish it from the ‘mental’ pain of (say) the loss of a loved one. These are obviously very different kinds of mental state, and it is wrong to think that they have very much in common just because we call them both ‘pain’. But this fact doesn’t make the pain of (say) a toothache any less mental. For pain is a state of consciousness: nothing could have a pain unless it was conscious, and nothing could be conscious unless it had a mind.

Does the existence of sensations refute the first part of Brentano’s thesis, that mentality is sufficient for intentionality? Only if it is true that they are wholly lacking in any intentionality. And this does not
The puzzle of representation

It seems to be true. Although we would not say that my back pain is ‘about’ anything, it does have some representational character insofar as it feels to be in my back. I could have a pain that feels exactly the same, ‘pain-wise’, but is in the top of my spine rather than the base of my spine. The difference in how the two pains feel would purely be a matter of where they are felt to be. To put the point more vividly: I could have two pains, one in each hand, which felt exactly the same, except that one felt to be in my right hand, and the other felt to be in my left hand. This felt location is plausibly a difference in intentionality – in what the mental state is ‘directed on’ – so it is not true that pains (at least) have no intentionality whatsoever.

Of course, this does not mean that pains are propositional attitudes in Russell’s sense. For they are not directed on situations. An ascription of pain – ‘Oswaldo feels pain’ – does not fit into the ‘A ψs that S’ form that I took as a criterion for the ascription of propositional attitudes. But the fact that a mental state is not a propositional attitude does not mean it is not intentional because, as we have already seen, not all thoughts or intentional states of mind are propositional attitudes (love was our earlier example). And if we understand the idea of ‘representational character’ or intentionality in the general way that I am doing here, it is hard to deny that pains have representational character.

What about the other example, of undirected depression or misery? Well, of course, there is such a thing as depression in which the person suffering from the depression cannot identify what it is that they are depressed about. But this by itself does not mean that such depression has no object, that it has no directedness. For one thing, it cannot be a criterion for something’s being an intentional state that the subject of the state must be able to identify its object – otherwise certain forms of self-deception would be impossible. But, more importantly, the description of this kind of emotion as not directed on anything misdescribes it. For depression of any kind is typically a ‘thoroughly negative view of the external world’ – in Lewis Wolpert’s economical phrase. This is as much true of the depression which is ‘not about anything in particular’ as of the depression which has a definite, easily identifiable object. The
The puzzle of representation

generalised depression is a way of experiencing the world *in general* – everything seems bad, nothing is worth doing, the world of the depressed person ‘shrinks’. That is, generalised depression is a way in which one’s mind is directed upon the world – and therefore is intentional – since the world ‘in general’ can still be an object of a state of mind.

It is not obvious, then, that there are any states of mind which are wholly non-intentional. However, there may still be *properties* or *features* of states of mind which are non-intentional: for example, although my toothache does have an intentional directedness upon my tooth, it may have a distinctive quality of *naggingness* which is not intentional at all: the naggingness is not directed on anything, it is just *there*. These apparent properties are sometimes known as *qualia*. If sensations like pain have these properties, then there may be a residual *element* in sensation which is not intentional, even though the sensation considered as a whole mental state is intentional. So even if the first part of Brentano’s thesis is true of whole mental states – they are all intentional – there may still be a non-intentional element in mental life. This would be something of a pyrrhic victory for Brentano’s thesis.

So much, then, for the idea that mentality is sufficient for intentionality. But is mentality necessary for intentionality? That is: is it true that if something exhibits intentionality, then that thing is (or has) a mind? Are minds the only things in the world that have intentionality? This is more tricky. To hold that minds are not the only things that have intentionality, we need to give an example of something that has intentionality but doesn’t have a mind. And it seems that there are plenty of examples. Take books. This book contains many sentences, all of which have meaning, represent things and therefore have intentionality in some sense. But the book doesn’t have a mind.

The natural reply to this is to employ the line of thought I used when discussing linguistic representation above. That is, we should say that the book’s sentences do not have intentionality *intrinsically*, but only have it because they are *interpreted* by the readers of the book. The interpretations provided by the states of mind of the reader, however, do have intrinsic intentionality.

39
The puzzle of representation

Philosophers sometimes mark the distinction between books and minds in this respect by talking about ‘original’ and ‘derived’ intentionality. The intentionality present in a book is merely derived intentionality: it is derived from the thoughts of those who write and read the book. But our minds have original intentionality: their intentionality does not depend on, or derive from, the intentionality of anything else.  

So we can reframe our questions as follows: can anything other than minds have original intentionality? This question is very baffling. One problem with it is that if we were to encounter something that exhibited original intentionality, it is hard to see how it could be a further question whether that thing had a mind. So do we want to say that only minds, as we know them, can exhibit original intentionality? The difficulty here is that it begins to look like a mere stipulation: if, for example, we discovered that computers were capable of original intentionality, we may well say: How amazing! A computer can have a mind! Or we may decide to use the terms differently, and say: ‘How amazing! Something can have original intentionality without having a mind!’ The difference between the two reactions may seem largely a matter of terminology. In Chapter 3, I will have more to say about this question.

The second part of Brentano’s thesis – that mentality is a necessary condition of intentionality – introduces some puzzling questions, but it nonetheless seems very plausible in its general outlines. However, we should reserve judgement on it until we discover a little more about what it is to have a mind.

Conclusion: from representation to the mind

The example of the interstellar ‘letter’ from Pioneer 10 brought the puzzling nature of representation into focus. After that, I considered pictorial representation, and the resemblance theory of pictorial representation, as this kind of representation seemed, at first sight, to be simpler than other kinds. But this appearance was deceptive. Not only does resemblance seem a slim basis on which to found representation, but pictures also need interpretation. Interpretation
The puzzle of representation

seems necessary for linguistic representation too. And I then suggested that interpretation derives from mental representation, or intentionality. To understand representation, we need to understand representational states of mind. This is the topic of the next chapter.

Further reading

Understanding thinkers and their thoughts

I have said that to understand representation we have to understand thought. But how much do we really know about thought? Or, for that matter, how much do we know about the mind in general?

You might be tempted to think that this is a question that can only really be answered by the science of the brain. But, if this were true, then most people would know very little about thought and the mind. After all, most people have not studied the brain, and even to experts some aspects of the brain are still utterly mysterious. So if we had to understand the details of brain functioning in order to understand minds, very few of us would know anything about minds.

But there surely is a sense in which we do know an enormous amount about minds. In fact, minds are so familiar to us that this fact can escape notice at first. What I mean is that we know that we have thoughts, experiences, memories, dreams, sensations and emotions, and we know that other people have them too. We are very aware of fine distinctions between kinds of mental state – between hope and expectation, for example, or regret and remorse. This knowledge of minds is put to use in understanding other people. Much of our everyday life depends on our knowledge of what other people are thinking, and we are often pretty good at knowing what this is. We know what other people are thinking by watching them, listening to them, talking to them and getting to know their characters. This knowledge of people often enables us to predict what they will do – often with an accuracy which would put the Meteorological Office to shame.

What I have in mind here are very ordinary cases of ‘prediction’. For example, suppose you call a friend and arrange to meet her for lunch tomorrow. I would guess that (depending on who the friend is) many of us would be more confident that a friend will show up than we are confident of the weather forecast. Yet in making this
Understanding thinkers and their thoughts

‘prediction’ we are relying on our knowledge of her mind – that she understands the words spoken to her, that she knows where the restaurant is, that she wants to meet you for lunch, and so on.

So, in this sense at least, we are all experts on the mind. But notice that this does not, by itself, mean that the mind is something different from the brain. For it is perfectly consistent with the fact that we know a lot about the mind to hold that these mental states (like desire, understanding, etc.) are ultimately just biochemical states of the brain. If this were the case, then our knowledge of minds would also be knowledge of brains – although it might not seem that way to us.

Fortunately, we do not have to settle the question of whether the mind is the brain in order to figure out what we do know about the mind. To explain why not, I need to say a little bit about the notorious ‘mind–body problem’.

The mind–body problem

The mind–body problem is the problem of how mind and body are connected to one another. We know that they are connected of course: we know that when people’s brains are damaged their ability to think is transformed. We all know that when people take narcotic drugs, or drink too much alcohol, these bodily activities affect the brain, which in turn affects the thoughts they have. Our minds and the matter which makes up our bodies are clearly related – but how?

One reason this is a problem is because, on the one hand, it seems obvious that we must just be entirely made up of matter and, on the other hand, it seems obvious that we cannot just be made up of matter; we must be something more. We think we must just be matter, for example, because we believe that human beings have evolved from lower forms of life, which themselves were made entirely from matter – when minds first evolved, the raw material out of which they evolved was just complex matter. And it is plausible to believe that we are entirely made up of matter – for example, if all my matter were taken away, bit by bit, there would be nothing of me left.
Understanding thinkers and their thoughts

But it seems so hard to believe that we are, underneath it all, just matter – just a few dollars’ worth of carbon, water and some minerals. It is easy for anyone who has experienced the slightest damage to their body to get the sense that it is just incredible that this fragile, messy matter constitutes their nature as thinking, conscious agents. Likewise, although people sometimes talk of the ‘chemistry’ that occurs between people who are in love, the usage is obviously metaphorical – the idea that love itself is literally ‘nothing but a complex chemical reaction’ seems just absurd.

I once heard a (probably apocryphal) story that illustrates this feeling.¹ According to the story, some medical researchers in the 1940s discovered that female cats who were deprived of magnesium in their diet stopped caring for their offspring. This was reported in a newspaper under the headline, ‘Motherlove is magnesium’. Whether the story is true doesn’t matter – what matters is why we find it funny. Thinking of our conscious mental lives as ‘really’ being complex physical interactions between chemicals seems to be as absurd as thinking of motherlove as ‘really’ being magnesium.

Or is it? Scientists are finding more and more detailed correlations between psychological disorders and specific chemicals in the brain.² Is there a limit to what they can find out about these correlations? It seems a desperate last resort to insist, from a position of almost total ignorance, that there must be a limit. For we just don’t know. Perhaps the truth isn’t as simple as ‘motherlove is magnesium’ – but may it not be too far away from that?

So we are dragged first one way, and then the other. Of course, we think to ourselves, we are just matter, organised in a complex way; but then, on reflection, it seems impossible that we are just matter, there must be more to us that this. This, in barest outline, is one way of expressing the mind–body problem. It has proved to be one of the most intractable problems of philosophy – so much so that some philosophers have thought that it is impossible to solve. The seventeenth-century English philosopher Joseph Glanvill (1636–1680) expressed this idea poignantly: ‘How the purer spirit is united to this clod is a knot too hard for fallen humanity to untie’.

Others are more optimistic, and have offered solutions to this
problem. Some – materialists or physicalists – think that, despite our feelings to the contrary, it is possible to demonstrate that the mind is just complex matter: the mind is just the matter of the brain organised in a certain complex way. Others think that mind cannot just be matter, but must be something else, some other kind of thing. Those who believe, for instance, that we have ‘immaterial’ souls, which survive the death of our bodies, must deny that our minds are the same things as our bodies. For, if our minds were the same as our bodies, how could they survive the annihilation of those bodies? These philosophers are dualists, as they think there are two main kinds of thing – the material and the mental. (A less common solution these days is to claim that everything is ultimately mental: this is idealism.)

Materialism, in one of its many varieties, tends to be the orthodox approach to the mind–body problem these days. Dualism is less common, but still defended vigorously by its proponents. In Chapter 6 (‘Consciousness and physicalism’), I will return to this problem, and will attempt to make it more precise and to outline what is at issue between dualism and materialism. But, for the time being, we can put the mind–body problem to one side when investigating the problem of mental representation. Let me explain.

The problem about mental representation can be expressed very simply: how can the mind represent anything at all? Suppose for the moment that materialism is true: the mind is nothing but the brain. How does this help with the problem of mental representation? Can’t we just rephrase the question and ask: how can the brain represent anything at all? This seems just as hard to understand as the question about the mind. For all its complexity, the brain is just a piece of matter, and how a piece of matter can represent anything else seems just as puzzling as how a mind can represent something – whether that mind is a piece of matter or not.

Suppose for a moment that materialism is true, and think about what is inside your head. There are about 100 billion brain cells. These form a substance of a grey and white watery consistency resembling yoghurt. About a kilogram of this stuff constitutes your brain. If materialism is true, then this yoghurty substance alone
enables you to think – about yourself, your life and the world. It enables you to reason about what to do. It enables you to have experiences, memories, emotions and sensations. But how? How can this watery yoghurty substance – this ‘clod’ – constitute your thoughts?

On the other hand, let’s suppose dualism is true: the mind is not the brain but is something else, distinct from the brain, like an ‘immaterial soul’. Then it seems that we can pose the same question about the immaterial soul: how can an immaterial soul represent anything at all? Descartes believed that mind and body were distinct things: the mind was, for Descartes, an immaterial soul. He also thought that the essence of this soul is to think. But to say that the essence of the soul is to think does not answer the question ‘How does the soul manage to think?’. In general, it’s not very satisfactory to respond to the question ‘How does this do that?’ with the answer ‘Well, it’s because it’s in the essence (or nature) of this to do that’. To think that that’s all there is to it would be to be like the famous doctor in Molière’s play, *Le Malade imaginaire*, who answered the question of how opium sends you to sleep by saying that it has a *virtus dormitiva* or a ‘dormitive virtue’, i.e. it is in the essence or nature of opium to send one to sleep.

Both materialism and dualism, then, need a solution to the problem of representation. The upshot is that answering the mind–body problem with materialism or dualism does not by itself solve the problem of representation. For the latter problem will remain even when we have settled on materialism or dualism as an answer to the former problem. If materialism is true, and everything is matter, we still need to know what is the difference between thinking matter and non-thinking matter. And if dualism is true, then we still need to know what it is about this non-material mind that enables it to think.

(On the other hand, if idealism is true, then there is a sense in which everything is thought, anyway, so the problem does not arise. However, idealism of this kind is much harder to believe – to put it mildly – than many philosophical views, so it looks as if we would be trading one mystery for another.)

This means that we can discuss the main issues of this book with-
Understanding thinkers and their thoughts

out having to decide on whether materialism or dualism is the right solution to the mind–body problem. The materialism/dualism controversy is not directly relevant to our problems. For the purposes of this chapter, this is a good thing. For, although we do not know in any detail what the relation between the mind and brain is, what I am interested in here is what we do know about minds in general, and thought in particular. That’s the topic of the rest of this chapter. We shall return to the mind–body problem in Chapter 6.

Understanding other minds

So what do we know about the mind? One way of approaching this question is to ask: ‘How do we find out about the mind?’. Of course, these are not the same question. (Compare the questions, ‘What do we know about water?’ and ‘How do we find out about water?’.) But, as we shall see, in the case of the mind, asking how we know will cast considerable light on what we know.

One thing that seems obvious is that we know about the minds of others in a very different way from the way we know our own minds. We know about our own minds partly by introspecting. If I am trying to figure out what I think about a certain question, I can concentrate on the contents of my conscious mind until I work it out. But I can’t concentrate in the same way on the contents of your mind in figuring out what you think. Sometimes, of course, I cannot tell what I really think, and I have to consult others – a friend or a therapist, perhaps – about the significance of my thoughts and actions, and what they reveal about my mind. But the point is that learning about one’s own mind is not always like this, whereas learning about the minds of others always is.

The way we know about the states of mind of others is not, so to speak, symmetrical to the way we know our own states of mind. This ‘asymmetry’ is related to another important asymmetry: the different ways we use to know about the position of our own bodies and the bodies of others. In order to know whether your legs are crossed, I have to look, or use some other form of observation or inspection (I could ask you). But I don’t need any sort of observation to tell
Understanding thinkers and their thoughts

me whether my legs are crossed. Normally, I know this immediately, without observation. Likewise, I can typically tell what I think without having to observe my words and watch my actions. Yet I can’t tell what you think without observing your words and actions.

Where the minds of others are concerned, it seems obvious that all we have to go on is what people say and do: their observable behaviour. So how can we get from knowledge of people’s observable behaviour to knowledge of what they think?

A certain sort of philosophical scepticism says that we can’t. This is ‘scepticism about other minds’, and the problem it raises is known as ‘the problem of other minds’. This will need a brief digression. According to this sceptical view, all that we really know about other people are facts about their observable behaviour. But it seems possible that people could behave as they do without having minds at all. For example, all the people you see around you could be robots programmed by some mad scientist to behave as if they were conscious, thinking people: you might be the only real mind around. This is a crazy hypothesis, of course: but it does seem to be compatible with the evidence we have about other minds.

Compare scepticism about other minds with scepticism about the existence of the ‘external world’ (that is, the world outside our minds). This kind of scepticism says that, in forming your beliefs about objects in the world, all you really have to go on is the evidence of your senses: your beliefs formed on the basis of experiences. But these experiences and beliefs could be just as they are, yet the ‘external’ world be very different from the way you think it is. For example, your brain could be kept in a vat of nutrients, its input and output nerves being stimulated by a mad scientist to make it appear that you are experiencing the world of everyday objects. This too is a crazy hypothesis: but it also seems to be compatible with your experience.

These versions of scepticism are not meant to be philosophically tenable positions: there have been few philosophers in history who have seriously held that other people do not have minds. What scepticism does is force us to uncover what we really know, and force us to justify how we know it. To answer scepticism, we need to give an
Understanding thinkers and their thoughts

account of what it is to know something, and therefore account for
what we ‘really’ know. So the arguments for and against scepticism
belong properly to the theory of knowledge (called epistemology)
and lie outside the scope of this book. For this reason, I'm going
to put scepticism to one side. My concern in this book is what we
believe to be true about our minds. In fact, we all believe that we
know a lot about the minds of others, and I think we are undoubt-
edly right in this belief. So let us leave it to the epistemologists to
tell us what knowledge is – but whatever it is, it had better allow the
obvious fact that we know a lot about the minds of others.

Our question, then, is about how we come to know about other
minds – not about whether we know. That is, given that we know
a lot of things about the minds of others, how do we know these
things? One aspect of the sceptical argument that seems hard to
deny is this: all we have to go on when understanding other people
is their observable behaviour. How could it be otherwise? Surely we
do not perceive other people's thoughts or experiences – we perceive
their observable words and their actions. So the question is: how do
we get from the observable behaviour to knowledge of their minds?
One answer that was once seriously proposed is that the observable
behaviour is, in some sense, all there is to having a mind: for ex-
ample, all there really is to being in pain is ‘pain-behaviour' (crying,
moaning complaining, etc.). This view is known as behaviourism,
and it is worth starting our examination of our knowledge of minds
with an examination of behaviourism.

Though it seems very implausible, behaviourism was, for a short
time in the twentieth century, popular in both psychology and
the philosophy of mind. It gives a straightforward answer to the
question of how we know the minds of others. But it makes the
question of how we know our own minds very problematic, because,
as I noted above, we can know our own minds without observing
our behaviour. (Hence the popular philosophical joke, repeated ad
nauseam to generations of students: two behaviourists meet in the
street; one says to the other, ‘You’re feeling pretty well today, how
am I feeling?’) This aspect of behaviourism goes hand in hand with
its deliberate disregard (or even its outright denial) of subjective,
conscious experience – what it’s like, from the inside, to have a mind.

I don’t want to focus on these drawbacks of behaviourism, which are discussed in detail in many other books on the philosophy of mind. What I want to concentrate on is behaviourism’s internal inadequacy: the fact that, even in its own terms, it cannot account for the facts about the mind purely in terms of behaviour.7

An obvious initial objection to behaviourism is that we have many thoughts that are not revealed in behaviour at all. For example, I believe that Riga is the capital of Latvia, though I have never expressed that belief in any behaviour. So would behaviourism deny that I have this belief? No. Behaviourism would say that belief does not require actual behaviour, but a disposition to behave. It would compare the belief to a disposition such as the solubility of a lump of sugar. A lump of sugar can be soluble even if it is never placed in water; the lump’s solubility resides in the fact that it is disposed to dissolve when put in water. Analogously, believing that Riga is the capital of Latvia is being disposed to behave in a certain way.

This seems more plausible until we ask what this ‘certain way’ is. What is the behaviour that relates to the belief that Riga is the capital of Latvia as the dissolving of the sugar relates to its solubility? One possibility is that the behaviour is verbal: saying ‘Riga is the capital of Latvia’ when asked the question ‘What is the capital of Latvia?’. (So asking the question would be analogous to putting the sugar in water.)

Simple as it is, this suggestion cannot be right. For I will only answer ‘Riga is the capital of Latvia’ to the question ‘What is the capital of Latvia?’ if, among other things, I understand English. But understanding English is not a precondition for believing that Riga is the capital of Latvia: plenty of monoglot Latvians have true beliefs about their capital. So understanding English must be a distinct mental state from believing that Riga is the capital of Latvia, and this too must be explained in behavioural terms. Let’s bypass the question of whether understanding English can be explained in purely behaviourist terms – to which the answer is without doubt ‘No’8 – and pursue this example for a moment.
Understanding thinkers and their thoughts

Suppose that the behaviourist explanation of my understanding of the sentence ‘Riga is the capital of Latvia’ is in terms of my disposition to utter the sentence. This disposition cannot, obviously, just be the disposition to make the sounds ‘Riga is the capital of Latvia’: a parrot could have this disposition without understanding the sentence. What we need (at least) is the idea that the sounds are uttered with understanding, i.e. certain utterances of the sentence, and certain ways of responding to the utterance, are appropriate and others are not. When is it appropriate to utter the sentence? When I believe that Riga is the capital of Latvia? Not necessarily, as I can utter the sentence with understanding without believing it. Perhaps I utter the sentence because I want my audience to believe that Riga is the capital of Latvia, though I myself (mistakenly) believe that Vilnius is.

But, in any case, the behaviourist cannot appeal to the belief that Riga is the capital of Latvia in explaining when it is right to utter the sentence, as uttering the sentence was supposed to explain what it is to have the belief. So this explanation would go round in circles. The general lesson here is that thoughts cannot be fully defined in terms of behaviour: other thoughts need to be mentioned too. Each time we try to associate one thought with one piece of behaviour, we discover that this association won’t hold unless other mental states are in place. And trying to associate each of these other mental states with other pieces of behaviour leads to the same problems. Your individual thought may be associated with many different pieces of behaviour depending on which other thoughts you have.

A simpler example will sharpen the point. A man looks out of a window, goes to a closet and takes an umbrella before leaving his house. What is he thinking? The obvious answer is that he thought that it was raining. But notice that, even if this is true, this thought would not lead him to take his umbrella unless he also wants to stay dry and he believes that taking his umbrella will help him stay dry and he believes that this object is his umbrella. This might seem so obvious that it hardly needs saying. But, on reflection, it is obvious that if he didn’t have these (doubtless unconscious) thoughts, it would be quite mysterious why he should take his umbrella when
Understanding thinkers and their thoughts

he thought it was raining. Where this point should lead is, I think, clear: we learn about the thoughts of others by making reasoned conjectures about what makes sense of their behaviour.

However, as our little examples show, there are many ways of making sense of a piece of behaviour, by attributing to the thinker very different patterns of thought. How, then, do we choose between all the possible competing versions of what someone’s thoughts are? The answer, I believe, is that we do this by employing, or presupposing, various general hypotheses about what it is to be a thinker. Take the example of the man and his umbrella. We could frame the following conjectures about what his state of mind is:

- He thought it was raining, and wanted to stay dry (and, we hardly need to add, he thought his umbrella would help him stay dry and he thought this was his umbrella, etc.).
- He thought it was sunny, and he wanted the umbrella to protect him from the heat of the sun (and he thought his umbrella would protect him from the sun and he thought this was his umbrella, etc.).
- He had no opinion about the weather, but he believed that his umbrella had magical powers and he wanted to take it to ward off evil spirits (and he thought this was his umbrella, etc.).
- He was planning to kill an enemy and believed that his umbrella contained a weapon (and he thought this was his umbrella, etc.).

All of these are possible explanations for why he did what he did, and we could think up many more. But, given that it actually is raining, and we know this, the first explanation is by far the most likely. Why? Well, it is partly because we believe that he can see what we see (that it’s raining) and partly because we think that it is a generally undesirable thing to get wet when fully clothed, and that people where possible avoid undesirable things when it doesn’t cost them too much effort . . . and so on. In short, we make certain assumptions about his view of his surroundings, his mental faculties, and his degree of rationality, and we attribute to him the thoughts it is reasonable for him to have, given those faculties.
Understanding thinkers and their thoughts

It has become customary among many philosophers of mind (and some psychologists too) to describe the assumptions and hypotheses we adopt when understanding other minds as a sort of theory of other minds. They call this theory ‘common-sense psychology’ or ‘folk psychology’. The idea is that, just as our common-sense knowledge of the physical world rests on knowledge of some general principles of the characteristic behaviour of physical objects (‘folk physics’), so our common-sense knowledge of other minds rests on knowledge of some general principles of the characteristic behaviour of people (‘folk psychology’).

I agree with the idea that our common-sense knowledge of other thinkers is a kind of theory. But I prefer the label ‘common-sense psychology’ to ‘folk psychology’ as a name for this theory. These are only labels, of course, and in one sense it doesn’t matter too much which you use. But, to my ear, the term ‘folk psychology’ carries the connotation that the principles involved are mere ‘folk wisdom’, homespun folksy truisms of the ‘many hands make light work’ variety. So, in so far as the label ‘folk psychology’ can suggest that the knowledge involved is unsophisticated and banal, the label embodies an invidious attitude to the theory. As we shall see, quite a lot turns on one’s attitude to the theory, so it is better not to prejudice things too strongly at the outset.

Since understanding why other thinkers do what they do is (more often than not) derived from knowledge of their observable behaviour, the understanding given by common-sense psychology is often called ‘the explanation of behaviour’. Thus, philosophers often say that the point or purpose or function of common-sense psychology is the explanation of behaviour. In a sense this is true – we are explaining behaviour in that we are making sense of the behaviour by attributing mental states. But, in another way, the expression ‘the explanation of behaviour’ is misleading, as it makes it look as if our main concern is always with what people are doing, rather than what they are thinking. Obviously, we often want to know what people are thinking in order to find out what they will do, or to make sense of what they have done – but sometimes it is pure curiosity that makes us want to find out what they are.
thinking. Here our interest is not in their behaviour as such, but in the psychological facts that organise and ‘lie behind’ the behaviour – those facts that makes sense of the behaviour.

Behaviourists, of course, would deny that there is anything psychological lying behind behaviour. They could accept, just as a basic fact, that certain interpretations of behaviour are more natural to us than others. So, in our umbrella example, the behaviourist can accept that the reason that the man takes his umbrella is because he thought it was going to rain, and so on. This is the natural thing to say, and the behaviourist could agree. But since, according to behaviourism, there is no real substance to the idea that something might be producing the behaviour or bringing it about, we should not take the description of how the man’s thoughts lead to his behaviour as literally true. We are ‘at home’ with certain explanations rather than others; but that doesn’t mean that they are true. They are just more natural for us.

This view is very unsatisfactory. Surely, in understanding others, we want to know what is true of them, and not just which explanations we find it more natural to give. And this requires, it seems to me, that we are interested in what makes these explanations true – and therefore in what makes us justified in finding one explanation more natural than others. That is, we are interested in what it is that producing the behaviour or bringing it about. So to understand more deeply what is wrong with this behaviourist view, we need to look more closely at the idea of thoughts lying behind behaviour.

The causal picture of thoughts

One aspect of this idea is just the ordinary view, mentioned earlier, that we cannot directly perceive other people’s thoughts. It’s worth saying here that this fact by itself doesn’t make other people’s minds peculiar or mysterious. There are many things which we cannot perceive directly, which are not for that reason mysterious. Microbes, for example, are too small to be directly perceived; black holes are too dense even to allow light to escape from them, so we cannot directly perceive them. But our inability to directly perceive these
things does not in itself make them peculiar or mysterious. Black holes may be mysterious, but not just because we can’t see them.

However, when I say that thoughts ‘lie behind’ behaviour I don’t just mean that thoughts are not directly perceptible. I also mean that behaviour is the result of thought, that thoughts produce behaviour. This is how we know about thoughts: we know about them through their effects. That is, thoughts are among the causes of behaviour: the relation between thought and behaviour is a causal relation.

What does it mean to say that thoughts are the causes of behaviour? The notions of cause and effect are among the basic notions we use to understand our world. Think how often we use the notions in everyday life: we think the government’s economic policy causes inflation or high unemployment, smoking causes cancer, the HIV virus causes AIDS, excess carbon dioxide in the atmosphere causes global warming, which will in turn cause the rising of the sea level, and so on. Causation is, in the words of David Hume (1711–1776), the ‘cement of the universe’.10 To say that thoughts are the causes of behaviour is partly to say that this ‘cement’ (whatever it is) is what binds thoughts to the behaviour they lie behind. If my desire for a drink caused me to go to the fridge, then the relation between my desire and my action is in some sense fundamentally the same as the relation between someone’s smoking and their getting cancer: the relation of cause and effect. That is, in some sense my thoughts make me move. I will call the assumption that thoughts and other mental states are the causes of behaviour the ‘causal picture of thought’.

Now, although we talk about causes and effects constantly, there is massive dispute among philosophers about what causation actually is, or even if there is any such thing as causation.11 So, to understand fully what it means to say that thoughts are the causes of behaviour, we need to know a little about causation. Here I shall restrict myself to some uncontroversial features of causation, and show how these features can apply to the relation between thought and behaviour.

First, when we say that A caused B, we normally commit ourselves to the idea that if A had not occurred, B would not have
Understanding thinkers and their thoughts

occurred. When we say, for example, that someone’s smoking caused their cancer, we normally believe that if they hadn’t smoked then they would not have got cancer. Philosophers put this by saying that causation involves counterfactuals: truths about matters ‘contrary to fact’. So we could say that, if we believe that A caused B, we commit ourselves to the truth of the counterfactual claim: ‘If A had not occurred, B would not have occurred’.

Applied to the relation between thoughts and behaviour, this claim about the relation between counterfactuals and causation says this: if a certain thought – say, a desire for a drink – has a certain action – drinking – as a result, then if that thought hadn’t been there the action wouldn’t have been there either. If I hadn’t had the desire, then I wouldn’t have had the drink.

What we learned in the discussion of behaviourism was that thoughts give rise to behaviour only in the presence of other thoughts. So my desire for a drink will cause me to get a drink only if I also believe that I am actually capable of getting myself a drink, and so on. This is exactly the same as in non-mental cases of causation: for example, we may say that a certain kind of bacterium caused an epidemic, but only in the presence of other factors such as inadequate vaccination, the absence of emergency medical care and decent sanitation and so on. We can sum this up by saying that in the circumstances, if the bacteria hadn’t been there, then there wouldn’t have been an epidemic. Likewise with desire: in the circumstances, if my desire had not been there, I wouldn’t have had the drink. That is part of what makes the desire a cause of the action.

The second feature of causation I shall mention is the relation between causation and the idea of explanation. To explain something is to answer a ‘Why?’-question about it. To ask ‘Why did the First World War occur?’ and ‘Explain the origins of the First World War’ is to ask pretty much the same sort of thing. One way in which ‘Why?’ questions can be answered is by citing the cause of what you want explained. So, for example, an answer to the question ‘Why did he get cancer?’ could be ‘Because he smoked’; an answer to ‘Why was there a fire?’ could be ‘Because there was a short-circuit’.

It’s easy to see how this applies to the relation between thoughts
Understanding thinkers and their thoughts

and behaviour, since we have been employing it in our examples so far. When we ask ‘Why did the man take his umbrella?’ and answer ‘Because he thought it was raining etc.’, we are (according to the causal picture) explaining the action by citing its cause, the thoughts that lie behind it.

The final feature of causation I shall mention is the link between causation and regularities in the world. Like much in the contemporary theory of causation, the idea that cause and regularity are linked derives from Hume. Hume said that a cause is an ‘object followed by another, and where all the objects, similar to the first, are followed by objects similar to the second’. So if, for example, this short-circuit caused this fire, then all events similar to this short-circuit will cause events similar to this fire. Maybe no two events are ever exactly similar; but all the claim requires is that two events similar in some specific respect will cause events similar in some specific respect.

We certainly expect the world to be regular. When we throw a ball into the air, we expect it to fall to the ground, usually because we are used to things like that happening. And if we were to throw a ball into the air and it didn’t come down to the ground, we would normally conclude that something else intervened – that is, some other cause stopped the ball from falling to the ground. We expect similar causes to have similar effects. Causation seems to involve an element of regularity.

However, some regularities seem to be more regular than others. There is a regularity in my pizza eating: I have never eaten a pizza more than 20 inches in diameter. It is also a regularity that unsupported objects (apart from balloons etc.) fall to the ground. But these two regularities seem to be very different. For only modesty stops me from eating a pizza larger than 20 inches, but it is nature that stops unsupported objects from flying off into space. For this reason, philosophers distinguish between mere accidental regularities, like the first, and laws of nature, like the second.

So if there is an element of regularity in causation then there must be regularity in the relation between thought and behaviour – if this really is a causal relation. I’ll discuss the idea that there are such regularities, and what they may be like, in the next section.
Let's draw these various lines of thought about causation and thought together. To say that thoughts cause behaviour is to say at least the following things:

1. The relation between thought and behaviour involves the truth of a counterfactual to the effect that, given the circumstances, if the thought had not been there, then the behaviour would not have been there.
2. To cite a thought, or bunch of thoughts, as the cause of a piece of behaviour is to explain the behaviour, since citing causes is one way of explaining effects.
3. Causes typically involve regularities or laws, so, if there is a causal relationship between thought and behaviour, then we might expect there to be regularities in the connection between thought and behaviour.

At no point have I said that causation has to be a physical relation. Causation may be mental or physical, depending on whether what it relates (its ‘relata’) are mental or physical. So the causal picture of the mind does not entail physicalism or materialism. Nonetheless, the causal picture of thought is a key element in what I am calling the ‘mechanical’ view of the mind. According to this view, the mind is a causal mechanism: a part of the causal order of nature, just as the liver and the heart are part of the causal order of nature. And we find out about the minds of others in just the same way that we find out about the rest of nature: by their effects. The mind is a mechanism that has its effects in behaviour.

But why should we believe that mental states are causes of behaviour at all? After all, it is one thing to deny behaviourism but quite another to accept that mental states are causes of behaviour. This is not a trivial hypothesis, something that anyone would accept who understood the concept of a mental state. In fact, many philosophers deny it. For example, the view that mental states are causes of behaviour is denied by Wittgenstein and some of his followers. In their view, to describe the mind in terms of causes and mechanisms is to make the mistake of imposing a model of explanation which
is only really appropriate for non-mental things and events. ‘The mistake’, writes G.E.M. Anscombe, a student of Wittgenstein’s, ‘is to think that the relation of being done in execution of a certain intention, or being done intentionally, is a causal relation between act and intention’.13

Why might someone think this? How might it be argued that mental states are not the causes of behaviour? Well, consider the example of the mental phenomenon of humour. We can distinguish between the mental state (or, more precisely, event) of being amused and the observable manifestations of that state: laughing, smiling and so on. We need to make this distinction, of course, because someone can be silently amused, and someone can pretend to be amused and convince others that they are genuinely amused. But does this distinction mean that we have to think of the inner state of being amused as causing the outward manifestations? The opponents of the causal view of the mind say not. We should, rather, think of the laughing (in a genuine case of amusement) as the expression of amusement. Expressing amusement in this case should not be thought of as an effect of an inner state, but rather as partially constituting what it is to be amused. To think of the inner state as causing the external expression would be as misleading as thinking of some hidden facts that a picture (or a piece of music) expresses. As Wittgenstein puts it, ‘speech with and without thought is to be compared with the playing of a piece of music with or without thought’.14

This may help give some idea of why some philosophers reject the causal picture of thought. Given this opposition, we need reasons for believing in the causal picture of thought. What reasons can be given? Here I shall mention two reasons that support the causal picture. The first argument derives from ideas of Donald Davidson’s.15 The second is a more general and ‘ideological’ argument – it depends on accepting a certain picture of the world, rather than accepting that a certain conclusion decisively follows from a certain set of indisputable premises.

The first argument is best introduced with an example. Consider someone, let’s call him Boleslav, who wants to kill his brother. Let’s
suppose he is jealous of his brother, and feels that his brother is frustrating his own progress in life. We could say that Boleslav has a *reason* for killing his brother – we might not think it is a very good reason, or a very moral reason, but it is still a reason. A reason (in this sense) is just a collection of thoughts that make sense of a certain plan of action. Now, suppose that Boleslav is involved in a bar-room brawl one night, for reasons completely unconnected to his murderous plot, and accidentally kills a man who, unknown to him, is his brother (perhaps his brother is in disguise). So Boleslav has a reason to kill his brother, and kills his brother, but does not kill his brother *for that reason*.

Compare this alternative story: Boleslav wants to kill his brother, for the same reason. He goes into the bar, recognises his brother and shoots him dead. In this case, Boleslav has a reason for killing his brother, and kills his brother for that reason.

What is the difference between the two cases? Or, to put it another way, what is involved in performing an action *for a reason*? The causal picture of thoughts gives an answer: someone performs an action for a reason when their reason is a *cause* of their action. So, in the first case, Boleslav’s fratricidal plan did not cause him to kill his brother, even though he did have a reason for doing so, and he did perform the act. But, in the second case, Boleslav’s fratricidal plan was the cause of his action. It is the difference in the causation of Boleslav’s behaviour that distinguishes the two cases.

How plausible is it to say that Boleslav’s reason (his murderous bunch of thoughts) was the cause of the murder in the second case but not in the first? Well, remember the features of causation mentioned above; let’s apply two of them to this case. (I shall ignore the connection between mental causation and laws – this will be discussed in the next section.)

First, the counterfactual feature: it seems right to say that, in the first case, other things being equal (i.e. keeping all the other circumstances the same as far as possible), if Boleslav had not had the fratricidal thoughts, then he would still have killed his brother. Killing his brother in the brawl is independent of his fratricidal thoughts. But in the second case this is not so.
Second, the explanatory feature of causation. When we ask ‘Why did Boleslav kill his brother?’ in the first case, it is not a good answer to say ‘Because he was jealous of his brother’. His jealousy of his brother does not explain why he killed his brother in this case; he did not kill his brother because of the fratricidal desires that he had. In the second case, however, killing his brother is explained by the fratricidal thoughts: we should treat them as the cause.

What the argument claims is that we need to distinguish between these two sorts of case, and that we can distinguish between them by thinking of the relation between reason and action as a causal relation. And this gives us an answer to the question: what is it to do something for a reason, or what is it to act on a reason? The answer is: to act on a reason is to have that reason as a cause of one’s action.

I think this argument is persuasive. But it is not absolutely compelling. For the argument itself does not rule out an alternative account of what it is to act on a reason. The structure of the argument is as follows: here are two situations that obviously differ; we need to explain the difference between them; appealing to causation explains the difference between them. This may be right – but notice that it does not rule out the possibility that there is some other even better account of what it is to act on a reason. It is open, therefore, to the opponent of the causal picture of thought to respond to the argument by offering an alternative account. So the first argument will not persuade this opponent.

However, it is useful to see this argument of Davidson’s in its historical context. The argument is one of a number of arguments which arose in opposition to the view above that I attributed to Wittgenstein and his followers: the view that it is a mistake to think of the mind in causal terms at all. These other arguments aimed to show that there is an essential causal component in many mental concepts. For example, perception was analysed as involving a causal relation between perceiver and the object perceived; memory was analysed as involving a causal relation between the memory and the fact remembered; knowledge and the relation between language and reality was thought of as fundamentally based on
causal relations. Davidson’s argument is part of a movement which analysed many mental concepts in terms of causation. Against this background, I can introduce my second argument for the causal picture of thought.

The second argument is what I call the ideological argument. I call it this because it depends upon accepting a certain picture of the world, the mechanical/causal world picture. This picture sees the whole of nature as obeying certain general causal laws – the laws of physics, chemistry, biology, etc. – and it holds that psychology too has its laws, and that the mind fits into the causal order of nature. Throughout nature we find causation, the regular succession of events and the determination of one event by another. Why should the mind be exempt from this sort of determination?

After all, we do all believe that mental states can be affected by causes in the physical world: the colours you see, the things you smell, the food you taste, the things you hear – all of these experiences are the result of certain purely mechanistic physical processes outside your mind. We all know how our minds can be affected by chemicals – stimulants, antidepressants, narcotics, alcohol – and in all these cases we expect a regular, law-like connection between the taking of the chemical drug and the nature of the thought. So if mental states can be effects, what are supposed to be the reasons for thinking that they cannot also be causes?

I admit that this falls a long way short of being a conclusive argument. But it’s hard to see how you could have a conclusive philosophical argument for such a general, all-embracing view. What I am going to assume here, in any case, is that, given this overall view of the non-mental world, we need some pretty strong positive reasons to believe that the mental world does not work in the same sort of way.

Common-sense psychology

So much, for the time being, for the idea that mental states are the causes of behaviour. Let’s now return to the idea of common-sense psychology: the idea that when we understand the minds of others,
we employ (in some sense) a sort of ‘theory’ which characterises or describes mental states. Adam Morton has called this idea the ‘Theory Theory’ of common-sense psychology – i.e. the *theory* that common-sense psychology is a *theory* – and I’ll borrow the label from him. To understand this Theory Theory, we need to know what a theory is, and how the common-sense psychology theory applies to mental states. Then we need to ask about how this theory is supposed to be employed by thinkers.

In most general terms, we can think of a theory as a principle, or collection of principles, that is devised to explain certain phenomena. For there to be a theory of mental states, then, there needs to be a collection of principles which explain mental phenomena. Where common-sense psychology is concerned, these principles might be as simple as the truisms that, for example, *people generally try to achieve the object of their desires* (other things being equal) or that *if a person is looking at an object in front of him/her in good light, then he/she will normally believe that the object is in front of him/her* (other things being equal). (The apparent triviality of these truisms will be discussed below.)

However, in the way it is normally understood, the claim that common-sense psychology is a theory is not just the claim that there are principles which describe the behaviour of mental states. What is meant in addition to this is that mental states are what philosophers call ‘theoretical entities’. That is, it is not just that mental states are describable by a theory, but also that the (true, complete) theory of mental states tells us everything there is to know about them. Compare the theory of the atom. If we knew a collection of general principles that described the structure and behaviour of the atom, these would tell us everything we needed to know about atoms in general – for everything there is to know about atoms is contained within the true complete theory of the atom. (Contrast colours: it’s arguably false that everything we know about colours is contained within the physical theory of colours. We also know what colours look like, which is not something that can be given by having knowledge of the theory of colours.) Atoms are theoretical entities, not just in the sense that they are posits of a theory, but also
because their nature is exhausted by the description of them given by the theory. Likewise, according to the Theory Theory, all there is to know about, say, \textit{belief} is contained within the true complete theory of belief.

An analogy may help to make the point clear.\textsuperscript{20} Think of the theory as being rather like a \textit{story}. Consider a story which goes like this: ‘Once upon a time there was a man called King Lear, who had three daughters, called Goneril, Regan and Cordelia. One day he said to them . . .’ and so on. Now, if you ask, ‘Who was King Lear?’, a perfectly correct answer would be to paraphrase some part of the story: ‘King Lear is the man who divided his kingdom, disinherited his favourite daughter, went mad, and ended up on a heath’ and so on. But if you ask, ‘Did King Lear have a son? What happened to him?’ or ‘What sort of hairstyle did King Lear have?’, the story gives no answer. But it’s not that there is some fact about Lear’s son or his hairstyle which the story fails to mention; it’s rather that everything there is to know about Lear is contained within the story. To think there might be more is to misunderstand the story. Likewise, to think that there is more to atoms than is contained within the true complete theory of atoms is (on this view of theories) to fail to appreciate that atoms are theoretical entities.

The analogy with common-sense psychology is this. The theory of belief, for example, might say something like: ‘There are these states, beliefs, which causally interact with desires to cause actions . . .’ and so on, listing all the familiar facts about beliefs and their relations to other mental states. Once all these familiar facts have been listed, the list gives a ‘theoretical definition’ of the term ‘belief’. The nature of beliefs will be, on this view, entirely exhausted by these truisms about beliefs. There is no more to beliefs than is contained within the theory of belief; and likewise with other kinds of thought.\textsuperscript{21}

It is important to distinguish, in principle, the idea that common-sense psychology is a theory from the causal picture of thoughts as such. One could accept the causal picture of thoughts – which, remember, is simply the claim that thoughts have effects in behaviour – without accepting the idea that common-sense psychology is a
Understanding thinkers and their thoughts

theory (see ‘Theory versus simulation’, p. 77). It would also be possible to deny the causal theory of thoughts – to deny that thoughts have effects – while accepting the conception of common-sense psychology as a theory. This view could be held by someone who is sceptical about the existence of causation, for example – though this would be quite an unusual view.

Bearing this in mind, we need to say more about how the Theory Theory is supposed to work, and what the theory says that thoughts are. Let’s take another simple everyday example. Suppose we see someone running along an empty pavement, carrying a number of bags, while a bus overtakes her, approaching a bus stop. What is she doing? The obvious answer is: she is running for the bus. The reflections earlier in this chapter should make us aware that there are alternatives to the obvious answer: perhaps she thinks she is being chased by someone, or perhaps she just wants to exercise. But, given the fact that the pavement is otherwise empty, and the fact that people don’t normally exercise while carrying large bags, we draw the obvious conclusion.

As with our earlier example, we rule out the more unusual interpretations because they don’t strike us as reasonable or rational things for the person to do. In making this interpretation of her behaviour, we assume a certain degree of rationality in the woman’s mind: we assume that she is pursuing her immediate goal (catching the bus), doubtless in order to reach some long-term goal (getting home). We assume this because these are, in our view, reasonable things to do, and she is using reasonable ways to try and do them (as opposed to, say, lying down in the middle of the road in front of the bus and hoping that the bus driver will pick her up).

To say this is not to deny the existence of irrational and crazy behaviour. Of course not. But if all behaviour was irrational and crazy, we would not be able to make these hypotheses about what is going on in people’s minds. We would not know how to choose between one wild hypothesis and another. In order for the interpretation of other thinkers to be possible in general, then, we have to assume that there is a certain regularity in the connection between thought and behaviour. And if the relation between people’s thoughts and
Understanding thinkers and their thoughts

their behaviour is to be regular enough to allow interpretation, then it is natural to expect that common-sense psychology will contain generalisations which detail these regularities. In fact, if common-sense psychology really is a theory, this is what we should expect anyway – for a theory is (at the very least) a collection of general principles or laws.

So the next question is: are there any psychological generalisations? Scepticism about such generalisations can come from a number of sources. One common kind of scepticism is based on the idea that, if there were psychological generalisations, then surely we (as ‘common-sense psychologists’) should know them. But, in fact, we are very bad at bringing any plausible generalisations to mind. As Adam Morton says, ‘principles like “anyone who thinks there is a tiger in this room will leave it” are . . . almost always false’.22 And when we do actually succeed in bringing to mind some true generalisations, they can turn out to be rather disappointing – consider our earlier example: ‘People generally try to achieve the object of their desires (other things being equal)’. We are inclined to say: ‘Of course! Tell me something I didn’t know!’.

The most striking thing about common-sense psychology . . . is the combination of a powerful and versatile explanatory power with a great absence of powerful or daring hypotheses. When one tries to come up with principles of psychological explanation generally used in everyday life one only finds dull truisms, and yet in particular cases, interesting brave and acute hypotheses are produced about why one person . . . acts in some particular way.23

There is obviously something right about this point; but perhaps it is a little exaggerated. After all, if the Theory Theory is right about common-sense psychology, we are employing this theory all the time when we interpret one another. So it will be hardly surprising if we find the generalisations that we use ‘truistic’. They will be truistic because they are so familiar – but this does not mean that they are not powerful. Compare our everyday theory of physical objects – ‘folk physics’. We know that solid objects resist pressure and
Understanding thinkers and their thoughts

penetration by other objects. This is, in a sense, a truism, but it is a truism which informs all our dealings with the world of objects.

Another way in which the defender of the Theory Theory can respond is by saying that it is only the assumption that we have some knowledge of a psychological theory of other minds that can satisfactorily explain how we manage to interpret other people so successfully. However, this knowledge need not be explicitly known by us – that is, we need not be able to bring this knowledge to our conscious minds. But this unconscious knowledge – like the mathematical knowledge of Meno’s slave which was discussed in Chapter 1 (see ‘Thought and consciousness’, p. 26) – is nonetheless there. And it explains how we understand each other, just as (say) unconscious or ‘tacit’ knowledge of linguistic rules explains how we understand language. (We will return to this idea in Chapter 4.)

So far, then, I have claimed that common-sense psychology operates by assuming that people are largely rational, and by assuming the truth of certain generalisations. We might not be able to state all these generalisations. But given that we know some of them – even the ‘dull truisms’ – we can now ask: what do the generalisations of common-sense psychology say that thoughts themselves are?

Let’s return to the example of the woman running for the bus. If someone were to ask why we interpret her as running for the bus, one thing we might say is: ‘Well, it’s obvious: the bus is coming’. But, when you think about it, this isn’t quite right. For it’s not the fact that the bus is coming which makes her do what she does, it’s the fact that she thinks that the bus is coming. If the bus were coming and she didn’t realise it, then she wouldn’t be running for the bus. Likewise, if she thought the bus was coming when in fact it wasn’t (perhaps she mistakes the sound of a truck for the sound of the bus), she would still run.

In more general terms, what people do is determined by how they take the world to be, and how a thinker takes the world to be is not always how the world is (we all make mistakes). But to say that a thinker ‘takes’ the world to be a certain way is just another way of saying that the thinker represents the world as being a certain way. So what thinkers do is determined by how they represent the world
Understanding thinkers and their thoughts

to be. That is, according to common-sense psychology, the thoughts which determine behaviour are *representational*.

Notice that it is *how* things are represented in thought that matters to common-sense psychology, not just *what* objects are represented. Someone who thinks the bus is coming must represent the bus as a bus, and not (for example) just as a *motorised vehicle of some kind* – for why should anyone run after a motorised vehicle of some kind? Or consider Boleslav: although he killed his brother in the first scenario, and represented his brother to himself in some way, he did not represent his brother as his brother, and this is why his desire to kill his brother is not the cause of the murder. (Recall the example of Orwell in Chapter 1: ‘Intentionality’.)

The other central part of the common-sense conception, at least according to the causal picture of thoughts, is that thoughts are the causes of behaviour. The common-sense conception says that, when we give an explanation of someone’s behaviour in terms of beliefs and desires, the explanation cites the causes of the behaviour. When we say that the woman is running for the bus *because* she believes that the bus is coming and wants to go home on the bus, this *because* expresses causation, just as the *because* in ‘He got cancer because he smoked’ expresses causation.

Combining the causal picture of thought with the Theory Theory, we get the following: common-sense psychology contains generalisations which describe the effects and potential effects of having certain thoughts. For instance: the simple examples we have discussed are examples in which what someone does depends on what he or she believes and what he or she wants or desires. So the causal picture-plus-Theory Theory would say that common-sense psychology contains a generalisation or bunch of generalisations about how beliefs and desires interact to cause actions. A rough attempt at formulating a generalisation might be:

Beliefs combine with desires to cause actions which aim at the satisfaction or fulfilment of those desires.\(^{24}\)

So, for example, if I desire a glass of wine, and I believe that there is some wine in the fridge, and I believe that the fridge is in the
kitchen, and I believe the kitchen is over there, these will cause me to act in a way that aims at the satisfaction of the desire: for example, I might move over there towards the fridge. (For more on this, see Chapter 5: ‘Representation and success in action’.)

Of course, I might not – even if I had all these beliefs and this desire. If I had another, stronger, desire to keep a clear head, or if I believed that the wine belonged to someone else and thought I shouldn’t take it, then I may not act on my desire for a glass of wine. But this doesn’t undermine the generalisation, since the generalisation is compatible with any number of desires interacting to bring about my action. If my desire to keep a clear head is stronger than my desire to have a drink, then it will be the cause of a different action (avoiding the fridge, going for a bracing walk in the country, or some such). All the generalisation says is that one will act in a way that aims to satisfy one’s desires, whatever they are.

It’s worth stressing again that trains of thought like these are not supposed to run through one’s conscious mind. Someone who wants a drink will hardly ever consciously think, ‘I want a drink; the drink is in the fridge; the fridge is over there; therefore I should go over there’ and so on. (If this is what he or she is consciously thinking, then it is probably unwise to have another drink.) The idea is rather that there are unconscious thoughts, with these representational contents, which cause a thinker’s behaviour. These thoughts are the causal ‘springs’ of thinkers’ actions, not necessarily the occupants of their conscious minds.

Or that’s what the causal version of the Theory Theory says; it’s now time to assess the Theory Theory. In assessing it, we need to address two central questions. First, does the Theory Theory give a correct account of our everyday psychological understanding of each other? That is, is it right to talk about common-sense psychology as a kind of theory at all, or should it be understood in some other way? (Bear in mind that to reject the Theory Theory on these grounds is not ipso facto to reject the causal picture of thoughts.)

The second question is, even if our everyday psychological understanding of each other is a theory, is it a good theory? That is, suppose the collection of principles and platitudes about beliefs and
desires causing actions (and so on), which I am calling common-sense psychology, is indeed a theory of human minds; are there any reasons for thinking that it is a true theory of human minds? This might seem like an odd question but, as we shall see, one's attitude to it can affect one's whole attitude to the mind.

It will be simplest if I take these questions in reverse order.

The science of thought: elimination or vindication?

Let's suppose, then, that common-sense psychology is a theory: the theory of belief, desire, imagination, hope, fear, love and the other psychological states which we attribute to one another. In calling this theory common-sense psychology, philosophers implicitly contrast it with the scientific discipline of psychology. Common-sense psychology is a theory whose mastery requires only a fairly mature mind, a bit of imagination and some familiarity with other people. In this sense, we are all psychologists. Scientific psychology, however, uses many technical concepts and quantitative methods which only a small proportion of ‘common-sense psychologists’ understand. But both theories claim, on the face of it, to be theories of the same thing – the mind. So how are they related?

It won’t do simply to assume that in fact scientific psychology and common-sense psychology are theories of different things – scientific psychology is the theory of the brain, while common-sense psychology is the theory of the mind or the person. There are at least three reasons why this won’t work. First, for all that we have said about these theories so far, the mind could just be the brain. As I said in Chapter 1, this is a question we can leave to one side in discussing thought and mental representation. But, whatever conclusion we reach on this, we certainly should not assume that just because we have two theories, we have two things. (Compare: common-sense says that the table is solid wood; particle physics says that the table is mostly empty space. It is a bad inference to conclude that there are two tables just because there are two theories.25) Second, scientific psychology talks about a lot of the same kinds of mental states as we talk about in common-sense psychology.
Understanding thinkers and their thoughts

Scientific psychologists attempt to answer questions such as: How does memory work? How do we see objects? Why do we dream? What are mental images? All these mental states and events – memory, vision, dreaming and mental imagery – are familiar to common-sense psychology. You do not have to have any scientific qualifications to be able to apply the concepts of memory or vision. Both scientific and common-sense psychology have things to say about these phenomena; there is no reason to assume at the outset that the phenomenon of vision for a scientific psychologist is a different phenomenon of vision for a common-sense ‘psychologist’.

Finally, a lot of actual scientific psychology is carried out without reference to the actual workings of the brain. This is not normally because the psychologists involved are Cartesian dualists, but rather because it often makes more sense to look at how the mind works in large-scale, macroscopic terms – in terms of ordinary behaviour – before looking at the details of its neural implementation. So the idea that scientific psychology is concerned only with the brain is not true even to the actual practice of psychology.

Given that scientific psychology and common-sense psychology are concerned with the same thing – the mind – the question of the relationship between them becomes urgent. There are many approaches one can take to this relationship, but in the end they boil down to two: vindication or elimination. Let’s look at these two approaches.

According to the vindication approach, we already know (or have good reason to believe) that the generalisations of common-sense psychology are largely true. So one of the things we can expect from scientific psychology is an explanation of how or why they are true. We know, for example, that if normal perceivers look at an object in good light, with nothing in the way, they will come to believe that the object is in front of them. So one of the aims of a scientific psychology of vision and cognition is to explain why this humble truth is in fact true: what is it about us, about our brains and our eyes, and about light that makes it possible for us to see objects, and to form beliefs about them on the basis of seeing them. The vindication approach might use an analogy with common-sense
Understanding thinkers and their thoughts

physics. Before Newton, people already knew that if an object is thrown into the air, it eventually returns to the ground. But it took Newton’s physics to explain why this truth is, in fact, true. And this is how things will be with common-sense psychology.26

By contrast, the elimination approach says that there are many reasons for doubting whether common-sense psychology is true. And if it is not true then we should allow the science of the mind or the brain to develop without having to employ the categories of common-sense psychology. Scientific psychology has no obligation to explain why the common-sense generalisations are true, because there are good reasons for thinking they aren’t true! So we should expect scientific psychology eventually to eliminate common-sense, rather than to vindicate it. This approach uses an analogy with discredited theories such as alchemy. Alchemists thought that there was a ‘philosopher’s stone’ which could turn lead into gold. But science did not show why this was true – it wasn’t true, and alchemy was eventually eliminated. And this is how things will be with common-sense psychology.27

Since proponents of the elimination approach are always materialists, the approach is known as eliminative materialism. According to one of its leading defenders, Paul Churchland:

[Eliminative materialism is the thesis that our common-sense conception of psychological phenomena constitutes a radically false theory, a theory so fundamentally defective that both the principles and the ontology of the theory will eventually be displaced . . . by completed neuroscience.

By ‘the ontology of the theory’, Churchland means those things which the theory claims to exist: beliefs, desires, intentions and so on. (‘Ontology’ is the study of being, or what exists.) So to say that the ontology of common-sense psychology is defective is to say that common-sense psychology is wrong about what is in the mind. In fact, eliminative materialists normally claim that none of the mental states that common-sense psychology postulates exists. That is, there are no beliefs, desires, intentions, memories, hopes, fears and so on.
Understanding thinkers and their thoughts

This might strike you as an incredible view. How could any reasonable person think that there are no thoughts? Isn’t that as self-refuting as saying that there are no words? But, before assessing the view, notice how smoothly it seems to flow from the conception of common-sense psychology as a theory, and of mental states as theoretical entities, mentioned in the previous section. Remember that, on this conception, the entire nature of thoughts is described by the theory. The answer to the question ‘What are thoughts?’ is: ‘Thoughts are what the theory of thoughts says they are’. So, if the theory of thoughts turns out to be false, then there is nothing for thoughts to be. That is, either the theory is largely true, or there are no thoughts at all. (Compare: atoms are what the theory of atoms says they are. There is nothing more to being an atom than what the theory says; so if the theory is false, there are no atoms.)

Eliminative materialists adopt the view that common-sense psychology is a theory, and then argue that the theory is false. But why do they think the theory is false? One reason they give is that (contrary to the vindication approach) common-sense psychology does not in fact explain very much:

[T]he nature and dynamics of mental illness, the faculty of creative imagination . . . the nature and psychological function of sleep . . . the rich variety of perceptual illusions . . . the miracle of memory . . . the nature of the learning process itself . . .

– all of these phenomena, according to Churchland, are ‘wholly mysterious’ to common-sense psychology, and will probably remain so. A second reason for rejecting common-sense psychology is that it is ‘stagnant’ – it has shown little sign of development throughout its long history (whose length Churchland rather arbitrarily gives as twenty-five centuries). A third reason is that there seems little chance that the categories of common-sense psychology (belief, desire and so on) will ‘reduce’ to physical categories, i.e. it seems very unlikely that scientists will be able to say in a detailed and systematic way which physical phenomena underpin beliefs and desires. (Remember the absurdity of ‘mother love is magnesium.’)
If this cannot be done, Churchland argues, there is little chance of making common-sense psychology scientifically respectable.

Before assessing these reasons, we must return to the question that is probably still worrying you: how can anyone really believe this theory? How can anyone believe that there are no beliefs? Indeed, how can anyone even assert the theory? For to assert something is to express a belief in it; but, if eliminative materialism is right, then there are no beliefs, so no-one can express them. So aren’t eliminative materialists, by their own lights, just sounding off, vibrating the airwaves with meaningless sounds? Doesn’t their theory refute itself?

Churchland has responded to this argument by drawing an analogy with the nineteenth-century belief in vitalism – the thesis that it is not possible to explain the difference between living and non-living things in wholly physicochemical terms, but only by appealing to the presence of a vital spirit or ‘entelechy’ which explains the presence of life. He imagines someone arguing that the denial of vitalism (antivitalism) is self-refuting:

My learned friend has stated that there is no such things as vital spirit. But this statement is incoherent. For if it is true, then my friend does not have vital spirit, and therefore must be dead. But if he is dead, then his statement is just a string of noises, devoid of meaning or truth. Evidently, the assumption that antivitalism is true entails that it cannot be true! QED

The argument being parodied is this: the vitalists held that it was in the nature of being alive that one’s body contained vital entelechy, so anyone who denies the existence of vital entelechies claims in effect that nothing is alive (including they themselves). This is a bad argument. Churchland claims that the self-refutation charge against eliminative materialism involves an equally bad argument: what it is to assert something, according to common-sense psychology, is to express a belief in it; so anyone who denies the existence of beliefs in effect claims that no-one asserts anything (including the eliminative materialists).

Certainly, the argument in favour of vitalism is a bad one. But
the analogy is not very persuasive. For, whereas we can easily make sense of the idea that life might not involve vital entelechy, it’s very hard to make sense of the analogous idea that assertion might not involve the expression of belief. Assertion itself is a notion from common-sense psychology: to assert something is to claim that it is true. In this sense, assertion is close to the idea of belief: to believe something is to hold it as true. So if common-sense psychology is eliminated, assertion as well as belief must go.32

Churchland may respond that we should not let the future development of science be dictated by what we can or cannot imagine or make sense of. If in the nineteenth century there were people who could not make sense of the idea that life did not consist of vital ‘entelechy’, these people were victims of the limitations of their own imaginations. But, of course, though it is a good idea to be aware of our own cognitive limits, such caution by itself does not get us anywhere near the eliminative position.

But we do not need to settle this issue about self-refutation in order to assess eliminative materialism. For, when examined, the positive arguments in support of the view are not very persuasive anyway. I shall briefly review them.

First, take the idea that common-sense psychology hasn’t explained much. On the face of it, the fact that the theory which explains behaviour in terms of beliefs and desires does not also explain why we sleep (and the other things mentioned above) is not in itself a reason for rejecting beliefs and desires. For why should the theory of beliefs and desires have to explain sleep? This response seems to demand too much of the vindication view.

Second, let’s consider the charge that common-sense psychology is ‘stagnant’. This is highly questionable. One striking example of how the common-sense theory of mind seems to have changed is in the place it assigns to consciousness (see Chapter 1). It is widely accepted that, since Freud, many people in the West accept that it makes sense to suppose that some mental states (for example, desires) are not conscious. This is a change in the view of the mind that can plausibly be regarded as part of common-sense.

In any case, even if common-sense psychology had not changed
very much over the centuries, this would not in itself establish much. The fact that a theory has not changed for many years could be a sign either of the theory’s stagnation or of the fact that it is extremely well established. Which of these is the case depends on how good the theory is in explaining the phenomena, not on the absence of change as such. (Compare: the common-sense physical belief that unsupported bodies fall to the ground has not changed for many centuries. Should we conclude that this common-sense belief is stagnant?)

Third, there is the issue of whether the folk psychological categories can be reduced to physical (or neurophysiological) categories. The assumption here is that, in order for a theory to be scientifically respectable, it has to be reducible to physics. This is a very extreme assumption, and, as I suggested in the introduction, it does not have to be accepted in order to accept the idea that the mind can be explained by science. If this is right, the vindication approach can reject reductionism without rejecting the scientific explanation of the mind.33

So, even if they are not ultimately self-refuting, the arguments for eliminative materialism are not very convincing. The specific reasons eliminative materialists offer in defence of the theory are very controversial. Nonetheless, many philosophers of mind are disturbed by the mere possibility of eliminative materialism. The reason is that this possibility (however remote) is one which is implicit in the Theory Theory. For if common-sense psychology really is an empirical theory – that is, a theory which claims to be true of the ordinary world of experience – then, like any empirical theory, its proponents must accept the possibility that it may one day be falsified. No matter how much we believe in the theories of evolution or relativity, we must accept (at least) the possibility that one day they may be shown to be false.

One way to avoid this unhappy situation is to reject the Theory Theory altogether as an account of our ordinary understanding of other minds. This approach would give a negative answer to the first question posed at the end of the last section – ‘Does the Theory Theory give an adequate account of common-sense psychology?’ Let’s take a brief look at this approach.
Understanding thinkers and their thoughts

Theory versus simulation

So there are many philosophers who think that the Theory Theory utterly misrepresents what we do when we apply psychological concepts to understand each others’ minds. Their alternative is rather that understanding others’ minds involves a kind of imaginative projection into their minds. This projection they call variously ‘replication’ or ‘simulation’.

The essence of the idea is easy to grasp. When we try and figure out what someone else is doing, we often put ourselves ‘in their shoes’, trying to see things from their perspective. That is, we imaginatively ‘simulate’ or ‘replicate’ the thoughts that might explain their behaviour. In reflecting on the actions of another, according to Jane Heal:

[W]hat I endeavour to do it to replicate or recreate his thinking. I place myself in what I take to be his initial state by imagining the world as it would appear from his point of view and then deliberate, reason and reflect to see what decision emerges.\(^3^4\)

A similar view was expressed over forty years ago by W.V. Quine:

[P]ropositional attitudes . . . can be thoughts of as involving something like quotation of one's imagined verbal response to an imagined situation. Casting our real selves thus in unreal roles, we do not generally know how much reality to hold constant. Quandaries arise. But despite them we find ourselves attributing beliefs, wishes and strivings even to creatures lacking the power of speech, such is our dramatic virtuosity. We project ourselves even into what from his behaviour we imagine a mouse's state of mind to have been, and dramatize it as a belief, wish or striving, verbalized as seems relevant and natural to us in the state thus feigned.\(^3^5\)

Recent thinkers have begun to take Quine’s observation very seriously, and there are a number of options emerging on how to fill out the details. But common to them all is the idea that figuring out what someone thinks is not looking at their behaviour and applying a theory to it. Rather, it is something more like a skill we have: the
skill to imagine ourselves into the minds of others, and to predict and explain their behaviour as a result.

It is easy to see how this ‘simulation theory’ of common-sense psychology can avoid the issue of the elimination of the mind. The eliminative materialist argument in the last section started with the assumptions that common-sense psychology was a theory, that the things it talks about are fully defined by the theory, and that it is competing with scientific psychology. The argument then said that common-sense psychology is not a very good theory – and concluded that there are no good reasons for thinking that mental states exist. But if common-sense psychology is not a theory at all then it is not even in competition with science, and the argument doesn’t get off the ground.

Although adopting the simulation theory would be a way of denying a premise – the Theory Theory – in one of the arguments for eliminative materialism, this is not a very good reason in itself for believing in the simulation theory. For, looked at in another way, the simulation theory could be quite congenial to eliminative materialists: it could be argued that, if common-sense psychology does not even present itself as a science, or as a ‘proto-science’, then we do not need to think of it as true at all. So one could embrace the simulation theory without believing that minds really exist. (The assumption here, of course, is that the only claims that tell us what there is in the world are the claims made by scientific theories.)

This combination of simulation theory and eliminative materialism is actually held by Quine. Contrast the remark quoted earlier with the following:

The issue is . . . whether in an ideal last accounting of everything . . . it is efficacious so to frame our conceptual scheme as to mark out a range of entities or units of a so-called mental kind in addition to the physical ones. My hypothesis, put forward in the spirit of a hypothesis of natural science, is that it is not efficacious.36

Since eliminative materialism and the simulation theory are compatible in this way, avoiding eliminative materialism would be a very bad motivation on its own for believing in the simulation theory.
And, of course, simulation theorists have a number of independent reasons for believing in their theory. One reason has already been mentioned in this chapter (in the section ‘Common-sense psychology’): no-one has been able to come up with very many powerful or interesting common-sense psychological generalisations. Remember Adam Morton’s remark that most of the generalisations of folk psychology are ‘dull truisms’. This is not intended as a knock-down argument, but (simulation theorists say) it should encourage us to look for an alternative to the Theory Theory.

So what should we make of the simulation theory? Certainly, many of us will recognise that this is often how things seem to us when we understand one another. ‘Seeing things from someone else’s point of view’ can even be practically synonymous with understanding them, and failure to see things from others’ points of view is clearly failure in one’s ability as a common-sense psychologist. But if simulation is such an obvious part of our waking lives, why should anyone deny that it takes place? And if no-one (even a Theory Theorist) should deny that it takes place, how is the simulation theory supposed to be in conflict with the Theory Theory? Why couldn’t a Theory Theorist respond by saying: ‘I agree: that’s how understanding other minds seems to us; but you couldn’t simulate unless you had knowledge of some underlying theory whose truth made the simulation possible. This underlying theory need not be applied consciously; but as we all know, this doesn’t mean it isn’t there’.

The answer depends on what we mean by saying that common-sense psychology is a theory that is ‘applied’ to thinkers. In the section on ‘Common-sense psychology’ above, I pointed out that the Theory Theory could say that common-sense psychological generalisations were unconsciously known by thinkers (an idea we will return to in Chapter 4). But, on the face of it, it looks as if this view is not directly threatened by the simulation theory. Since simulation relates to what we are explicitly aware of in acts of interpretation, the fact that we simulate others does not show that we do not have tacit knowledge of common-sense psychological generalisations. Simulation theorists therefore need to provide independent arguments against this view.
It is important not to rush to any hasty conclusions. It is still relatively early days for the simulation theory, and many of the details have not been worked out yet. However, it does seem that the Theory Theory can defend itself if it is allowed to appeal to the idea of tacit knowledge; and the Theory Theory can, it seems, accept the main insight of the simulation theory, that we often interpret others by thinking of things from their point of view etc. In this way, it might be possible to hold the best elements of both approaches to understanding other minds. Maybe there is no real dispute here, only a difference of emphasis.

Conclusion: from representation to computation

So how do we know about the mind? I’ve considered and endorsed an answer: by applying conjectures about people’s minds – or applying a theory of the mind – to explain their behaviour. Examining the theory then helps us then to answer the other question – what do we know about the mind? This question can be answered by finding out what the theory says about minds. As I interpret common-sense psychology, it says (at least) that thoughts are states of mind which represent the world and which have effects in the world. That’s how we get from an answer to the ‘How?’ question to an answer to the ‘What?’ question.

There are various ways in which an enquiry could go from here. The idea of a state which represents the world, and causes its possessor to behave in a certain way, is not an idea that is applicable only to human beings. Since our knowledge of thoughts is derived from behaviour – and not necessarily verbal behaviour – it is possible to apply the basic elements of common-sense psychology to other animals too.

How far down the evolutionary scale does this sort of explanation go? To what sorts of animals can we apply this explanation? Consider this striking passage from C.R. Gallistel:

On the featureless Tunisian desert, a long-legged, fast-moving ant leaves the protection of the humid nest on a foraging expedition. It
Understanding thinkers and their thoughts

moves across the desert in tortuous loops, running first this way, then that, but gradually progressing ever farther away from the life-sustaining humidity of the nest. Finally it finds the carcass of a scorpion, uses its strong pincers to gouge out a chunk nearly its own size, then turns to orient within one or two degrees of the straight line between itself and the nest entrance, a 1-millimetre-wide hole, 40 metres distant. It runs a straight line for 43 metres, holding its course by maintaining its angle to the sun. Three metres past the point at which it should have located the entrance, the ant abruptly breaks into a search pattern by which it eventually locates it. A witness to this homeward journey finds it hard to resist the inference that the ant on its search for food possessed at each moment a representation of its position relative to the entrance of the nest, a spatial representation that enabled it to compute the solar angle and the distance of the homeward journey from wherever it happened to encounter food.37

Here the ant’s behaviour is explained in terms of representations of locations in its environment. Something else is added, however: Gallistel talks about the ant ‘computing’ the solar angle and the distance of the return journey. How can we make sense of an ant ‘computing’ representations? Why is this conclusion ‘hard to resist’? For that matter, what does it mean to compute representations at all? It turns out, of course, that what Gallistel thinks is true of the ant, many people think is true of our minds – that as we move around and think about the world, we compute representations. This is the topic of the next chapter.

Further reading

readings on eliminative materialism and common-sense or ‘folk’ psychology. For the idea that mental states are causes of behaviour, see Donald Davidson’s essays collected in his *Essays on Actions and Events* (Oxford: Oxford University Press 1980); Davidson also combines this idea with a denial of psychological laws (in ‘Mental events’ and ‘The material mind’). For the causal theory of mind, D.M. Armstrong’s classic *A Materialist Theory of the Mind* (London: Routledge 1968; reprinted 1993) is well worth reading. Daniel C. Dennett has developed a distinctive position on the relations between science and folk psychology and between representation and causation: see the essays in *The Intentional Stance* (Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press 1987), especially ‘True believers’ and ‘Three kinds of intentional psychology’. An interesting version of the ‘simulation’ alternative to the Theory Theory is Jane Heal, ‘Replication and functionalism’ in J. Butterfield (ed.) *Language, Mind and Logic* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press 1986). The simulation/Theory Theory debate is well represented in the two volumes edited by Martin Davies and Tony Stone: *Folk Psychology: The Theory of Mind Debate* and *Mental Simulation: Evaluations and Applications* (both Oxford: Blackwell 1995).
3
Computers and thought

So far, I have tried to explain the philosophical problem of the nature of representation, and how it is linked with our understanding of other minds. What people say and do is caused by what they think – what they believe, hope, wish, desire and so on – that is, by their representational states of mind or thoughts. What people do is caused by the ways they represent the world to be. If we are going to explain thought, then we have to explain how there can be states which can at the same time be representations of the world and causes of behaviour.

To understand how anything can have these two features it is useful to introduce the idea of the mind as a computer. Many psychologists and philosophers think that the mind is a kind of computer. There are many reasons why they think this, but the link with our present theme is this: a computer is a causal mechanism which contains representations. In this chapter and the next I shall explain this idea, and show its bearing on the problems surrounding thought and representation.

The very idea that the mind is a computer, or that computers might think, inspires strong feelings. Some people find it exciting, others find it preposterous, or even degrading to human nature. I will try and address this controversial issue in as fair-minded a way as possible, by assessing some of the main arguments for and against the claims that computers can think, and that the mind is a computer. But first we need to understand these claims.

Asking the right questions

It is crucial to begin by asking the right questions. For example, sometimes the question is posed as: can the human mind be modelled on a computer? But, even if the answer to this question is
‘Yes’, how could that show that the mind is a computer? The British Treasury produces computer models of the economy – but no-one thinks that this shows that the economy is a computer. This chapter will explain how this confusion can arise. One of this chapter’s main aims is to distinguish between two questions:

1. Can a computer think? Or, more precisely, can anything think simply by being a computer?
2. Is the human mind a computer? Or, more precisely, are any actual mental states and processes computational?

This chapter will be concerned mainly with question 1, and Chapter 4 with question 2. The distinction between the two questions may not be clear yet, but, by the end of the chapter, it should be. To understand these two questions, we need to know at least two things: first, what a computer is; and, second, what it is about the mind that leads people to think that a computer could have a mind, or that the human mind could be a computer.

What is a computer? We are all familiar with computers – many of us use them every day. To many they are a mystery, and explaining how they work might seem a very difficult task. However, though the details of modern computers are amazingly complex, the basic concepts behind them are actually beautifully simple. The difficulty in understanding computers is not so much in grasping the concepts involved, but in seeing why these concepts are so useful.

If you are familiar with the basic concepts of computers, you may wish to skip the next five sections, and move directly to the section of this chapter called ‘Thinking computers?’ on p. 109. If you are not familiar with these concepts, then some of the terminology that follows may be a little daunting. You may want to read through the next few sections quite quickly, and the point of them will become clearer after you have then read the rest of this chapter and Chapter 4.

To prepare yourself for understanding computers, it’s best to abandon most of the presuppositions that you may have about them. The personal computers we use in our everyday lives normally
Computers and thought

have a typewriter-style keyboard and a screen. Computers are usually made out a combination of metal and plastic, and most of us know that they have things inside them called ‘silicon chips’, which somehow make them work. Put all these ideas to one side for the moment – none of these features of computers is essential to them. It’s not even essential to computers that they are electronic.

So what is essential to a computer? The rough definition I will eventually arrive at is: a computer is a device which processes representations in a systematic way. This is a little vague until we understand ‘processes’, ‘representations’ and ‘systematic’ more precisely. In order to understand these ideas, there are two further ideas that we need to understand. The first is the rather abstract mathematical idea of a computation. The second is how computations can be automated. I shall take these ideas in turn.

Computation, functions and algorithms

The first idea we need is the idea of a mathematical function. We are all familiar with this idea from elementary arithmetic. Some of the first things we learn in school are the basic arithmetical functions: addition, subtraction, multiplication and division. We then normally learn about other functions such as the square function (by which we produce the square of a number, $x^2$, by multiplying the number, $x$, by itself), logarithms and so on.

As we learn them at school, arithmetical functions are not numbers, but things that are ‘done’ to numbers. What we learn to do in basic arithmetic is to take some numbers and apply certain functions to them. Take the addition of two numbers, 7 and 5. In effect, we take these two numbers as the ‘input’ to the addition function and get another number, 12, as the ‘output’. This addition sum we represent by writing: 7 + 5 = 12. Of course, we can put any two numbers in the places occupied by 7 and 5 (the input places) and the addition function will determine a unique number as the output. It takes training to figure out what the output will be for any number whatsoever – but the point is that, according to the addition function, there is exactly one number that is the output of the function for any given group of input numbers.
If we take the calculation 7 + 5 = 12, and remove the numerals 7, 5 and 12 from it, we get a complex symbol with three ‘gaps’ in it: _ + _ = _. In the first two gaps, we write the inputs to the addition function, and in the third gap we write the output. The function itself could then be represented as _ + _, with the two blanks indicating where the input numbers should be entered. These blanks are standardly indicated by italic letters, x, y, z and so on – so the function would therefore be written \( x + y \). These letters, called ‘variables’ are a useful way of marking the different gaps or places of the function.

Now for some terminology. The inputs to the function are called the arguments of the function, and the output is called the value of the function. The arguments in the equation \( x + y = z \) are pairs of numbers \( x \) and \( y \) such that \( z \) is their value. That is, the value of the addition function is the sum of the arguments of that function. The value of the subtraction function is the result of subtracting one number from another (the arguments). And so on.

Though the mathematical theory of functions is very complex in its details, the basic idea of a function can be explained using simple examples such as addition. And, though I introduced it with a mathematical example, the notion of a function is extremely general and can be extended to things other than numbers. For example, because everyone has only one natural father, we can think of the expression ‘the natural father of \( x \)’ as describing a function, which takes people as its arguments and gives you their fathers as values. (Those familiar with elementary logic will also know that expressions such as ‘and’ and ‘or’ are known as truth-functions, e.g. the complex proposition \( P \& Q \) involves a function that yields the value True when both its arguments are true, and the value False otherwise.)

The idea of a function, then, is a very general one, and one that we implicitly rely on in our everyday life (every time we add up the prices of something in a supermarket, for example). But it is one thing to say what a function is, in the abstract, and another to say how we use them. To know how to employ a function, we need a method for getting the value of the function for a given argument.
or arguments. Remember what happens when you learn elementary arithmetic. Suppose you want to calculate the product of two numbers, 127 and 21. The standard way of calculating this is the method of long multiplication:

```
  127
× 21
 127
+2540
 2667
```

What you are doing when you perform long multiplication is so obvious that it would be banal to spell it out. But, in fact, what you know when you know how to do this is something incredibly powerful. What you have is a method for calculating the product of any two numbers — that is, of calculating the value of the multiplication function for any two arguments. This method is entirely general: it does not apply to some numbers and not to others. And it is entirely unambiguous: if you know the method, you know at every stage what to do next to produce the answer.

(Compare a method like this with the methods we use for getting on with people we have met for the first time. We have certain rough-and-ready rules we apply: perhaps we introduce ourselves, smile, shake hands, ask them about themselves, etc. But obviously these methods do not yield definite ‘answers’; sometimes our social niceties backfire.)

A method, such as long multiplication, for calculating the value of a function is known as an **algorithm**. Algorithms are also called ‘effective procedures’ as they are procedures which, if applied correctly, are entirely effective in bringing about their results (unlike the procedures we use for getting on with people). They are also called ‘mechanical procedures’, but I would rather not use this term, as in this book I am using the term ‘mechanical’ in a less precise sense.

It is very important to distinguish between algorithms and functions. An algorithm is a **method** for finding the **value** of a function.
A function may have more than one algorithm for finding its values for any given arguments. For example, we multiplied 127 by 21 by using the method of long multiplication. But we could have multiplied it by adding 127 to itself 20 times. That is, we could have used a different algorithm.

To say that there is an algorithm for a certain arithmetical function is not to say that an application of the algorithm will always give you a number as an answer. For example, you may want to see whether a certain number divides exactly into another number without remainder. When you apply your algorithm for division, you may find out that it doesn’t. So, the point is not that the algorithm gives you a number as an answer, but that it always gives you a procedure for finding out whether there is an answer.

When there is an algorithm that gives the value of a function for any argument, then mathematicians say that the function is computable. The mathematical theory of computation is, in its most general terms, the theory of computable functions, i.e. functions for which there are algorithms.

Like the notion of a function, the notion of an algorithm is extremely general. Any effective procedure for finding the solution to a problem can be called an algorithm, so long as it satisfies the following conditions:

1. At each stage of the procedure, there is a definite thing to do next. Moving from step to step does not require any special guesswork, insight or inspiration.
2. The procedure can be specified in a finite number of steps.

So we can think of an algorithm as a rule, or a bunch of rules, for giving the solution to a given problem. These rules can then be represented as a ‘flow chart’. Consider, for example, a very simple algorithm for multiplying two whole numbers, $x$ and $y$, which works by adding $y$ to itself. It will help if you imagine the procedure being performed on three pieces of paper, one for the first number (call this piece of paper $X$), one for the second number (call this piece of paper $Y$) and one for the answer (call this piece of paper the ANSWER).
Figure 3.1 shows the flow chart; it represents the calculation by the following series of steps:

**Step (i):** Write ‘0’ on the ANSWER, and go to step (ii).

**Step (ii):** Does the number written on $X = 0$?
   - If YES, then go to step (v)
   - If NO, then go to step (iii)

**Step (iii):** Subtract 1 from the number written on $X$, write the result on $X$, and go to step (iv)

**Step (iv):** Add the number written on $Y$ to the ANSWER, and go to step (ii)

**Step (v):** STOP

Let’s apply this to a particular calculation, say 4 times 5. (If you are familiar with this sort of procedure, you can skip this example and move on to the next paragraph.)

Begin by writing the numbers to be multiplied, 4 and 5, on the $X$ and $Y$ pieces of paper respectively. Apply step (i) and write 0 on the ANSWER. Then apply step (ii) and ask whether the number written on $X$ is 0. It isn’t – it’s 4. So move to step (iii), and subtract 1 from the number written on $X$. This leaves you with 3, so you...
Computers and thought

should write this down on \( X \), and move to step (iv). Add the number written on \( Y \) (i.e. 5) to the ANSWER, which makes the ANSWER read 5. Move to step (ii), and ask again whether the number on \( X \) is 0. It isn’t – it’s 3. So move to step (iii), subtract 1 from the number written on \( X \), write down 2 on \( X \) and move to step (iv). Add the number written on \( Y \) to the ANSWER, which makes the ANSWER read 10. Ask again whether the number written on \( X \) is 0. It isn’t – it’s 2. So move to step (iii), subtract 1 from the number written on \( X \), write down 1 on \( X \) and move to step (iv). Add the number written on \( Y \) to the ANSWER, which makes the ANSWER read 15. Ask again whether the number written on \( X \) is 0; it isn’t, it’s 1. So move to step (iii), subtract 1 from the number written on \( X \), write down 0 on \( X \) and move to step (iv). Add the number written on \( Y \) to the ANSWER, which makes the ANSWER read 20. Move to step (ii) and ask whether the number written on \( X \) is 0. This time it is, so move to step (v), and stop the procedure. The number written on the ANSWER is 20, which is the result of multiplying 4 by 5.¹

This is a pretty laborious way of multiplying 4 by 5. But the point of the illustration is not that this is a good procedure for us to use. The point is rather that it is an entirely effective procedure: at each stage, it is completely clear what to do next, and the procedure terminates in a finite number of steps. The number of steps could be very large; but for any pair of finite numbers, this will still be a finite number of steps.

Steps (iii) and (iv) of the example illustrate an important feature of algorithms. In applying this algorithm for multiplication, we employ other arithmetical operations: subtraction in step (iii), addition in step (iv). There is nothing wrong with doing this, so long as there are algorithms for the operations of subtraction and addition too – which of course there are. In fact, most algorithms will use other algorithms at some stage. Think of long multiplication: it uses addition to add up the results of the ‘short’ multiplications. Therefore, you will use some algorithm for addition when doing long multiplication. So our laborious multiplication algorithm can be broken down into steps which depend only on other (perhaps simpler) algorithms and simple ‘movements’ from step to step. This idea is very important in understanding computers, as we shall see.

1
The fact that algorithms can be represented by flow charts indicates the generality of the concept of an algorithm. As we can write flow charts for all sorts of procedures, so we can write algorithms for all sorts of things. Certain recipes, for example, can be represented as flow charts. Consider this algorithm for boiling an egg.

1. Turn on the stove
2. Fill the pan with water
3. Place the pan on the stove
4. When the water boils, add one egg, and set the timer
5. When the timer rings, turn off the gas
6. Remove the egg from the water
7. Result: one boiled egg.

This is a process that can be completed in a finite number of steps, and at each step there is a definite, unambiguous, thing to do next. No inspiration or guesswork is required. So, in a sense, boiling an egg can be described as an algorithmic procedure (see Figure 3.2).

![Figure 3.2 A flow chart for boiling an egg.](image)
Turing machines

The use of algorithms to compute the values of functions is at least as old as Ancient Greek mathematics. But it was only relatively recently (in fact, in the 1930s) that the idea came under scrutiny, and mathematicians tried to give a precise meaning to the concept of an algorithm. From the end of the nineteenth century, there had been intense interest in the foundations of mathematics. What makes mathematical statements true? How can mathematics be placed on a firm foundation? One question which became particularly pressing was: what determines whether a certain method of calculation is adequate for the task in hand? We know in particular cases whether an algorithm is adequate, but is there a general method that will tell us, for any proposed method of calculation, whether or not it is an algorithm?

This question is of deep theoretical importance for mathematics, because algorithms lie at the heart of mathematical practice – but if we cannot say what they are, we cannot really say what mathematics is. An answer to the question was given by the brilliant English mathematician Alan Turing in 1937. As well as being a mathematical genius, Turing (1912–1954) was arguably one of the most influential people of the twentieth century, in an indirect way. As we shall see, he developed the fundamental concepts from which flowed modern digital computers and all their consequences. But he is also famous for cracking the Nazis' Enigma code during the Second World War. This code was used to communicate with U-boats, which at the time were decimating the British Navy, and it is arguable that cracking the code was one of the major factors that prevented Britain from defeat at that point in the war.2

Turing answered the question about the nature of computation in a vivid and original way. In effect, he asked: what is the simplest possible device that could perform any computation whatsoever, no matter how complicated? He then proceeded to describe such a device, which is now called (naturally enough) a ‘Turing machine’.

A Turing machine is not a machine in the ordinary sense of the word. That is, it is not a physical machine, but rather an abstract, theoretical specification of a possible machine. Though people have
Computers and thought

built machines to these specifications, the point of them is not (in the first place) to be built, but to illustrate some very general properties of algorithms and computations.

There can be many kinds of Turing machines for different kinds of computation. But they all have the following features in common: a tape divided into squares and a device that can write symbols on the tape and then read those symbols. The device is also in certain ‘internal states’ (more on these later), and it can move the tape to the right or to the left, one square at a time. Let us suppose for simplicity that there are only two kinds of symbol that can be written on the tape: ‘1’ and ‘0’. Each symbol occupies just one square of the tape - so the machine can only read one square at a time. (We don’t have to worry yet what these symbols ‘mean’ – just consider them as marks on the tape.)

So the device can only do four things:

1. It can move the tape one square at a time, from left to right or from right to left.
2. It can read a symbol on the tape.
3. It can write a symbol on the tape, either by writing onto a blank square or by overwriting another symbol.
4. It can change its ‘internal state’.

The possible operations of a particular machine can be represented by the machine’s ‘machine table’. The machine table is, in effect, a set of instructions of the form ‘if the machine is in state X and reading symbol S, then it will perform a certain operation (e.g. writing or erasing a symbol, moving the tape) and change to state Y (or stay in the same state) and move the tape to the right/left’. If you like, you can think of the machine table as the machine’s ‘program’: it tells the machine what to do. In specifying a particular position in the machine table, we need to know two things: the current input to the machine and its current state. What the machine does is entirely fixed by these two things.

This will all seem pretty abstract, so let’s consider a specific example of a Turing machine, one that performs a simple
mathematical operation, that of adding 1 to a number. In order to get a machine to perform a particular operation, we need to interpret the symbols on the tape, i.e. take them to represent something. Let’s suppose that our 1s on the tape represent numbers: 1 represents the number 1, obviously enough. But we need ways of representing numbers other than 1, so let’s use a simple method: rather as a prisoner might represent the days of his imprisonment by rows of scratches on the wall, a line or ‘string’ of \( n \) 1s represents the number \( n \). So, 111 represents 3, 11111 represents 5, and so on.

To enable two or more numbers to be written on a tape, we can separate numbers by using one or more 0s. The 0s simply function to mark spaces between the numbers – they are the only ‘punctuation’ in this simple notation. So for example, the tape,

\[
\ldots\,000011100111111000100\ldots
\]

represents the sequence of numbers 3, 6, 1. In this notation, the number of 0s is irrelevant to which number is written down. The marks \ldots\ indicate that the blank tape continues indefinitely in both directions.

We also need a specification of the machine’s ‘internal states’; it turns out that the simple machine we are dealing with only needs two internal states, which we might as well call state A (the initial state) and state B. The particular Turing machine we are considering has its behaviour specified by the following instructions:

1. If the machine is in state A, and reads a 0, then it stays in state A, writes a 0, and moves one square to the right.
2. If the machine is in state A, and reads a 1, then it changes to state B, writes a 1, and moves one square to the right.
3. If the machine is in state B, and reads a 0, then it changes to state A, writes a 1 and stops.
4. If the machine is in state B, and reads a 1, then it stays in state B, writes a 1, and moves one square to the right.

The machine table for this machine will look like Figure 3.3.
Let's now imagine presenting the machine with part of a tape that looks like this:

00011000

This tape represents the number 2. (Remember, the 0s merely serve as 'punctuation', they don’t represent any number in this notation.) What we want the machine to do is add 1 to this number, by applying the rules in the machine table.

This is how it does it. Suppose it starts off in the initial state, state A, reading the square of tape at the extreme right. Then it follows the instructions in the table. The tape will ‘look’ like this during this process (the square of the tape currently being read by the machine is underlined):

(i) 0 0 0 1 1 0 0 0 . . .
(ii) . . 0 0 1 1 0 0 0 . . .
(iii) . . 0 0 0 1 1 0 0 0 . . .
(iv) . . . 0 0 0 1 1 0 0 0 . . .
(v) . . . . 0 0 0 1 1 0 0 0 . . .
(vi) . . . . . 0 0 0 1 1 0 0 0 . . .
(vii) . . . . . 0 0 1 1 1 0 0 0 . . .

At line (vi), the machine is in state B, it reads a 0, so it writes a 1, changes to state A, and stops. The ‘output’ is on line (vii): this represents the number 3, so the machine has succeeded in its task of adding 1 to its input.
But what, you may ask, has this machine really done? What is the point of all this tedious shuffling around along an imaginary tape? Like our example of an algorithm for multiplication above, it seems a laborious way of doing something utterly trivial. But, as with our algorithm, the point is not trivial. What the machine has done is compute a function. It has computed the function \( x + 1 \) for the argument 2. It has computed this function by using only the simplest possible ‘actions’, the ‘actions’ represented by the four squares of the machine table. And these are only combinations of the very simple steps that were part of the definition of all a Turing machine can do (read, write, change state, move the tape). I shall explain the lesson of this in a moment.

You may be wondering about the role of the ‘internal states’ in all this. Isn’t something being smuggled into the description of this very simple device by talking of its ‘internal’ states? Perhaps they are what is doing the calculation? I think this worry is a very natural one; but it is misplaced. The internal states of the machine are nothing over and above what the machine table says they are. The internal state, B, is, by definition, the state such that if the machine gets a 1 as input, the machine does so-and-so; and such that, if it gets a 0 as input, the machine does such-and-such. That’s all there is to these states.5 (‘Internal’ may therefore be misleading, as it suggests the states have a ‘hidden nature’.)

To design a Turing machine that will perform more complex operations (such as our multiplication algorithm of the previous section), we need a more complex machine table, more internal states, more tape and a more complex notation. But we do not need any more sophisticated basic operations. There is no need for us to go into the details of more complex Turing machines, as the basic points can be illustrated by our simple adder. However, it is important to dwell on the issue of notation.

Our prisoner’s tally notation for numbers has a number of obvious drawbacks. One is that it can’t represent 0 – a big drawback. Another is that very large numbers will take ages to compute, as the machine can only read one square at a time. (Adding 1 to the number 7,000,000 would require a tape with more squares than
there are inhabitants of London.) A more efficient system is the binary system, or base 2, where all natural numbers are represented by combinations of 1s and 0s. Recall that, in binary notation, the column occupied by multiples of 10 in the standard ‘denary’ system (base 10) is occupied by multiples of 2. This gives us the following translation from denary into binary:

\[
\begin{align*}
1 &= 1 \\
2 &= 10 \\
3 &= 11 \\
4 &= 100 \\
5 &= 101 \\
6 &= 110 \\
7 &= 111 \\
8 &= 1000 \\
\end{align*}
\]

And so on. Obviously, coding numbers in binary gives us the ability to represent much larger numbers more efficiently than our prisoner’s tally does.

An advantage of using binary notation is that we can design Turing machines of great complexity without having to add more symbols to the basic repertoire. We started off with two kinds of symbols, 0 and 1. In our prisoner’s tally notation, the 0s merely served to divide the numbers from each other. In base 2, the 0s serve as numerals, enabling us to write any number as a string of 1s and 0s. But notice that the machine still only needs the same number of basic operations: read a 1, write a 1, read a 0, write a 0, move the tape. So using base 2 gives us the potential of representing many more numbers much more efficiently without having to add more basic operations to the machine. (Obviously we need punctuation too, to show where one instruction or piece of input stops and another one starts. But, with sufficient ingenuity, we can code these as 1s and 0s too.)
We are now on the brink of a very exciting discovery. With an adequate notation, such as binary, not only the input to a Turing machine (the initial tape) but the machine table itself can be coded as numbers in the notation. To do this, we need a way of labelling the distinct operations of the machine (read, write, etc.), and the ‘internal states’ of the machine, with numbers. We used the labels ‘A’ and ‘B’ for the internal states of our machine. But this was purely arbitrary: we could have used any symbols whatsoever for these states: %, @, *, or whatever. So we could also use numbers to represent these states. And if we use base 2, we can code these internal states and ‘actions’ as 1s and 0s on a Turing machine tape.

Because any Turing machine is completely defined by its machine table, and any Turing machine table can be numerically coded, it obviously follows that any Turing machine can be numerically coded. So the machine can be coded in binary, and written on the tape of another Turing machine. So the other Turing machine can take the tape of the first Turing machine as its input: it can read the first Turing machine. All it needs is a method of converting the operations described on the tape of the first Turing machine – the program – into its own operations. But this will only be another machine table, which itself can be coded. For example, suppose we code our ‘add 1’ machine into binary. Then it could be represented on a tape as a string of 1s and 0s. If we add some 1s and 0s representing a number (say 127) to the tape, then these, plus the coding of our ‘add 1’ machine, can be the input to another Turing machine. This machine would itself have a program which interprets our ‘add 1’ machine. It can then do exactly what our ‘add 1’ machine does: it can add 1 to the number fed in, 127. It would do this by ‘mimicking’ the behaviour of our original ‘add 1’ machine.

Now, the exciting discovery is this: there is a Turing machine which can mimic the behaviour of any other Turing machine. Because any Turing machine can be numerically coded, it can be fed in as the input to another Turing machine, so long as that machine has a way of reading its tape. Turing proved from this that, to perform all the operations that Turing machines can perform, we don’t need a separate machine for each operation. We need only
Computers and thought

one machine that is capable of mimicking every other machine. This machine is called a universal Turing machine. And it is the idea of a universal Turing machine that lies behind modern general purpose digital computers. In fact, it is not an exaggeration to say that the idea of a universal Turing machine has probably affected the character of all our lives.

However, to say that a universal Turing machine can do anything that any particular Turing machine can do only raises the question: what can particular Turing machines do? What sorts of operations can they perform, apart from the utterly trivial one I illustrated?

Turing claimed that any computable function can in principle be computed on a Turing machine, given enough tape and enough time. That is, any algorithm could be executed by a Turing machine. Most logicians and mathematicians now accept the claim that to be an algorithm is simply to be capable of execution on some Turing machine, i.e. being capable of execution on a Turing machine in some sense tells us what an algorithm is. This claim is called Church’s thesis after the American logician Alonzo Church (b. 1903), who independently came to conclusions very similar to those of Turing. (It is sometimes called the Church–Turing thesis.) The basic idea of the thesis is, in effect, to give a precise sense to the notion of an algorithm, to tell us what an algorithm is.

You may still want to ask: how has the idea of a Turing machine told us what an algorithm is? How has it helped to appeal to these interminable ‘tapes’ and the tedious strings of 1s and 0s written on them? Turing’s answer could be put as follows: what we have done is reduced anything which we naturally recognise as an effective procedure to a series of simple steps performed by a very simple device. These steps are so simple that it is not possible for anyone to think of them as mysterious. What we have done, then, is to make the idea of an effective procedure unmysterious.

Coding and symbols

A Turing machine is a certain kind of input–output device. You put a certain thing ‘into’ the machine – a tape containing a string of 1s
and 0s – and you get another thing out – a tape containing another string of 1s and 0s. In between, the machine does certain things to the input – the things determined by its machine table or instructions – to turn it into the output.

One thing that might have been worrying you, however, is not the definition of the Turing machine, but the idea that such a machine can perform any algorithm whatsoever. It’s easy to see how it performs the ‘add 1’ algorithm, and with a little imagination we can see how it could perform the multiplication algorithm described earlier. But I also said that you could write an algorithm for a simple recipe, such as boiling an egg, or for figuring out which key opens a certain lock. How can a Turing machine do that? Surely a Turing machine can only calculate with numbers, as that is all that can be written on its tape?

Of course, a Turing machine cannot boil an egg, or unlock a door. But the algorithm I mentioned is a description of how to boil an egg. And these descriptions can be coded into a Turing machine, given the right notation.

How? Here’s one simple way to do it. Our algorithms were written in English, so first we need a way of coding instructions in English text into numbers. We could do this simply by associating each letter of the English alphabet and each significant piece of punctuation with a number, as follows:

\[ A - 1, B - 2, C - 3, D - 4, \text{ and so on.} \]

So my name would read:

\[ 20 \ 9 \ 13 \]

\[ 3 \ 18 \ 1 \ 14 \ 5 \]

Obviously, punctuation is crucial. We need a way of saying when one letter stops and another starts, and another way of saying when one word stops and another starts, and yet another way of knowing when one whole piece of text (e.g. a machine table) stops and another starts. But this presents no problem of principle. (Think how old-fashioned telegrams used words for punctuation, e.g. separat-
Computers and thought

Once we’ve coded a piece of text into numbers, we can rewrite these numbers in binary.

So we could then convert any algorithm written in English (or any other language) into binary code. And this could then be written on a Turing machine’s tape, and serve as input to the universal Turing machine.

Of course, actual computer programmers don’t use this system of notation for text. But I’m not interested in the real details at the moment: the point I’m trying to get across is just that once you realise that any piece of text can be coded in terms of numbers, then it is obvious that any algorithm that can be written in English (or in any other language) can be run on a Turing machine.

This way of representing is wholly **digital**, in the sense that each represented element (a letter, or word) is represented in an entirely ‘on–off’ way. Any square on a Turing machine’s tape has either a 1 on it or a 0. There are no ‘in-between’ stages. The opposite of digital form of representation is the **analogue** form. The distinction is best illustrated by the familiar example of analogue and digital clocks. Digital clocks represent the passage of time in a step-by-step way, with distinct numbers for each second (say), and nothing in between these numbers. Analogue clocks, by contrast, mark the passage of time by the smooth movement of a hand across the face. Analogue computers are not directly relevant to the issues raised here – the computers discussed in the context of computers and thought are all digital computers.

We are now, finally, getting close to our characterisation of computers. Remember that I said that a computer is a device that processes representations in a systematic way. To understand this, we needed to give a clear sense to two ideas: (i) ‘processes in a systematic way’ and (ii) ‘representation’. The first idea has been explained in terms of the idea of an algorithm, which has in turn been illuminated by the idea of a Turing machine. The second idea is implicit in the idea of the Turing machine: for the machine to be understood as actually computing a function, the numbers on its tape have to be taken as **standing for** or **representing** something. Other representations – e.g. English sentences – can then be coded into these numbers.
Sometimes computers are called information processors. Sometimes they are called symbol manipulators. In my terminology, this is the same as saying that computers process representations. Representations carry information in the sense that they ‘say’ something, or are interpretable as ‘saying’ something. That is what computers process or manipulate. How they process or manipulate is by carrying out effective procedures.

**Instantiating a function and computing a function**

This talk of representations now enables us to make a very important distinction that is crucial for understanding how the idea of computation applies to the mind.\(^8\)

Remember that the idea of a function can be extended beyond mathematics. In scientific theorising, for example, scientists often describe the world in terms of functions. Consider a famous simple example: Newton’s second law of motion, which says that the acceleration of a body is determined by its mass and the forces applied to it. This can be represented as \(F = ma\), which reads ‘Force = mass \(\times\) acceleration’. The details of this don’t matter: the point is that the force or forces acting on a certain body will equal the mass times the acceleration. A mathematical function – multiplication – whose arguments and values are numbers can represent the relationship in nature between masses, forces and accelerations. This relationship in nature is a function too: the acceleration of a body is a function of its mass and the forces exerted upon it. Let’s call this ‘Newton’s function’ for simplicity.

But, when a particular mass has a particular force exerted upon it, and accelerates at a certain rate, it does not *compute* the value of Newton’s function. If it did, then every force–mass–acceleration relationship in nature would be a computation, and every physical object a computer. Rather, as I shall say, a particular interaction *instantiates* the function: that is, it is an *instance* of Newton’s function. Likewise, when the planets in the solar system orbit the sun, they do so in a way that is a function of gravitational and inertial ‘input’. Kepler’s laws are a way of describing this function. But the
solar system is not a computer. The planets do not ‘compute’ their orbits from the input they receive: they just move.

So the crucial distinction we need is between a system’s *instantiating* a function and a system’s *computing* a function. By ‘instantiating’ I mean ‘being an instance of’ (if you prefer, you could substitute ‘being describable by’). Compare the solar system with a real computer, say a simple adding machine. (I mean an actual physical adding machine, not an abstract Turing ‘machine’.) It’s natural to say that an adding machine computes the addition function by taking two or more numbers as input (arguments) and giving you their sum as output (value). But, strictly speaking, this is not what an adding machine does. For, whatever numbers are, they aren’t the sort of thing that can be fed into machines, manipulated or transformed. (For example, you don’t destroy the number 3 by destroying all the 3s written in the world; that doesn’t make sense.) What the adding machine really does is take *numerals* – that is, representations of numbers – as input, and gives you numerals as output. This is the difference between the adding machine and the planets: although they instantiate a function, the planets do not employ representations of their gravitational and other input to form representations of their output.

Computing a function, then, requires representations: representations as the input and representations as the output. This is a perfectly natural way of understanding ‘computing a function’: when we compute with pen and paper, for example, or with an abacus, we use representations of numbers. As Jerry Fodor has said: ‘No computation without representation!’

How does this point relate to Turing machines and algorithms? A Turing machine table specifies transitions between the states of the machine. According to Church’s thesis, any procedure that is step-by-step algorithmic can be modelled on a Turing machine. So, any process in nature which can be represented in a step-by-step fashion can be represented by a Turing machine. The machine merely specifies the transitions between the states involved in the process. But this doesn’t mean that these natural processes are *computations*, any more than the fact that physical quantities such as
my body temperature can be represented by numbers means that my body temperature actually is a number. If a theory of some natural phenomenon can be represented algorithmically, then the theory is said to be computable – but this is a fact about theories, not about the phenomena themselves. The idea that theories may or may not be computable will not concern us any further in this book.10

Without wishing to labour the point, let me emphasise that this is why we needed to distinguish at the beginning of this chapter between the idea that some systems can be modelled on a computer and the idea that some systems actually perform computations. A system can be modelled on a computer when a theory of that system is computable. A system performs computations, however, when it processes representations by using an effective procedure.

**Automatic algorithms**

If you have followed the discussion so far, then a very natural question will occur to you. Turing machines describe the abstract structure of computation. But, in the description of Turing machines, we have appealed to ideas like ‘moving the tape’, ‘reading the tape’, ‘writing a symbol’ and so on. We have taken these ideas for granted, but how are they supposed to work? How is it that any effective procedure gets off the ground at all, without the intervention of a human being at each stage in the procedure?

The answer is that the computers with which we are familiar use automated algorithms. They use algorithms, and input and output representations, that are in some way ‘embodied’ in the physical structure of the computer. The last part of our account of computers will be a very brief description of how this can be done. This brief discussion cannot, of course, deal with all the major features of how actual computers work, but I hope it will be enough to give you the general idea.

Consider a very simple machine (not a computer) that is used for trapping mice. We can think of this mousetrap in terms of input and output: the trap takes live mice as input, and gives dead (or
perihhaps just trapped) mice as output. A simple way of representing the mousetrap is shown in Figure 3.4.

From the point of view of the simple description of the mousetrap, it doesn’t really matter what’s in the MOUSETRAP ‘box’: what’s ‘in the box’ is whatever it is that traps the mice. Boxes like this are known to engineers as ‘black boxes’: we can treat something as a black box when we are not really interested in how it works internally, but are interested only in the input–output tasks it performs. But, of course, we can ‘break into’ the black box of our mousetrap and represent its innards as in Figure 3.5.

The two internal components of the black box are the bait and the device that actually traps the mice (the arrow is meant to indicate that the mouse will move from the bait into the trapping device, not vice versa). In Figure 3.4, we are, in effect, treating the BAIT and TRAPPING DEVICE as black boxes. All we are interested in is what they do: the BAIT is whatever it is that attracts the mouse, and the TRAPPING DEVICE is whatever it is that traps the mouse.

But we can of course break into these black boxes too, and find out how they work. Suppose that our mousetrap is of the old-fashioned comic-book kind, with a metal bar held in place by a spring, which is released when the bait is taken. We can then

*Figure 3.4* Mousetrap ‘black box’.

*Figure 3.5* The mousetrap’s innards.
describe the trapping device in terms of its component parts. And its component parts too – SPRING, BAR etc. – can be thought of as black boxes. It doesn’t matter exactly what they are; what matters is what they are doing in the mousetrap. But, these boxes too can be broken into, and we can specify in more detail how they work. What is treated as one black box at one level can be broken down into other black boxes at other levels, until we come to understand the workings of the mousetrap.

This kind of analysis of machines is sometimes known as ‘functional analysis’: the analysis of the working of the machine into the functions of its component parts. (It is also sometimes called ‘functional boxology.’) Notice, though, that the word ‘function’ is being used in a different sense than in our earlier discussion: here, the function of a part of a system is the causal role it plays in the system. This use of ‘function’ corresponds more closely to the everyday use of the term, as in ‘what’s the function of this bit?’.

Now back to computers. Remember our simple algorithm for multiplication. This involved a number of tasks, such as writing symbols on the X and Y pieces of paper, and adding and subtracting. Now think of a machine that carries out this algorithm, and let’s think of how to functionally analyse it. At the most general level, of course, it is a multiplier. It takes numerals as input and gives you their products as output. At this level, it may be thought of as a black box (see Figure 3.6).

But this doesn’t tell us much. When we ‘look’ inside the black box, what is going on is what is represented by the flow chart (Figure 3.7). Each box in the flow chart represents a step performed by the machine. But some of these steps can be broken down into simpler steps. For example, step (iv) involves adding the number written on Y to the ANSWER. But adding is also a step-by-step procedure,
and so we can write a flow chart for this too. Likewise with the other steps: subtracting, ‘reading’ and so on. When we functionally analyse the multiplier, we find out that its tasks become simpler and simpler, until we get down to the simplest tasks it can perform.

Daniel Dennett has suggested a vivid way of thinking of the architecture of computers. Imagine each task in the flow chart’s boxes being performed by a little man, or ‘homunculus’. The biggest box (labelled Multiplier in Figure 3.6) contains a fairly intelligent homunculus, who, say, multiplies numbers expressed in denary notation. But inside this homunculus are other, less intelligent, homunculi who can do only addition and subtraction, and writing denary symbols on the paper. Inside these other homunculi are even more stupid homunculi who can translate denary notation into binary. And inside these are really stupid homunculi who can only read, write or erase binary numerals. Thus, the behaviour of the intelligent multiplier is functionally explained by postulating progressively more and more stupid homunculi.\(^{11}\)

If we have a way of making a real physical device that functions as a simple device – a stupid homunculus – we can build up combinations of these simple devices into complex devices that can perform the task of the multiplier. After all, the multiplier is nothing

---

**Figure 3.7** Flow chart for the multiplication algorithm again.
more than these simple devices arranged in the way specified by the flow chart. Now, remember that Turing’s great insight was to show that any algorithm could be broken down into tasks simple enough to be performed by a Turing machine. So let’s think of the simplest devices as the devices which can perform these simple Turing machine operations: move from left or right, read, write, etc.

All we need to do now is make some devices that can perform these simple operations.

And, of course, we have many ways of making them. For vividness, think of the tape of some Turing machine represented by an array of switches: the switch being on represents 1 and the switch being off represents 0. Then any computation can be performed by a machine that can move along the switches one by one, register which position they are in (‘reading’) and turn them on or off (‘writing’). So long as we have some way of programming the machine (i.e. telling it which Turing machine it is mimicking), then we have built a computer out of switches.

Real computers are, in a sense, built out of ‘switches’, although not in the simple way just described. One of the earliest computers (built in 1944) used telephone relays, while the Americans’ famous war effort ENIAC (used for calculating missile trajectories) was built using valves; and valves and relays are, in effect, just switches. The real advances came when the simplest processors (the ‘switches’) could be built out of semi-conductors, and computations could be performed faster than Turing ever dreamed of. Other major advances came with high-level ‘programming languages’: systems of coding that can make the basic operations of the machine perform all sorts of other more complex operations. But, for the purposes of this book, the basic principle behind even these very complex machines can be understood in the way I have outlined. (For more information about the history of the computer, see the chronology at the end of this book.)

One important consequence of this is that it doesn’t really matter what the computer is made of. What matters to its being a computer is what it does – that is, what computational tasks it performs, or what program it is running. The computers we use
today perform these tasks using microscopic electronic circuits etched on tiny pieces of silicon. But, although this technology is incredibly efficient, the tasks performed are, in principle, capable of being performed by arrays of switches, beads, matchsticks and tin cans, and even perhaps by the neurochemistry of the brain. This idea is known as the ‘variable realisation’ (or ‘multiple realisation’) of program (or software) by physical mechanism (hardware), i.e. the same program can be variably or multiply ‘realised’ by different pieces of hardware.

I should add one final point about some real computers. It is a simplification to say that all computers work entirely algorithmically. When people build computer programs to play chess, for example, the rules of chess tell the machine, entirely unambiguously, what counts as a legal move. At any point in the game only certain moves are allowed by the rules. But how does the machine know which move to make, out of all the possible moves? As a game of chess will come to an end in a finite – though possibly very large – number of moves, it is possible in principle for the machine to scan ahead, figuring out every consequence of every permitted move. However, this would take even the most powerful computer an enormous (to put it mildly) amount of time. (John Haugeland estimates that the computer would have to look ahead $10^{120}$ moves – which is a larger number than the number of quantum states in the whole history of the universe.) So, designers of chess-playing programs add to their machines certain rules of thumb (called heuristics) that suggest good courses of action, though, unlike algorithms, they do not guarantee a particular outcome. A heuristic for a chess-playing machine might be something like, ‘Try and castle as early in the game as possible’. Heuristics have been very influential in artificial intelligence research. It is time now to introduce the leading idea behind artificial intelligence: the idea of a thinking computer.

Thinking computers?

Equipped with a basic understanding of what computers are, the question we now need to ask is: why would anyone think that
being a computer – processing representations systematically – can constitute thinking?

At the beginning of this chapter, I said that to answer the question, ‘Can a computer think?’, we need to know three things: what a computer is, what thinking is and what it is about thought and computers that supports the idea that computers might think. We now have something of an idea of what a computer is, and in Chapters 1 and 2 we discussed some aspects of the common-sense conception of thought. Can we bring these things together?

There are a number of obvious connections between what we have learned about the mind and what we have learned about computers. One is that the notion of representation seems to crop up in both areas. One of the essential features of certain states of mind is that they represent. And in this chapter we have seen that one of the essential features of computers is that they process representations. Also, your thoughts cause you to do what you do because of how they represent the world to be. And it is arguable that computers are caused to produce the output they do because of what they represent: my adding machine is caused to produce the output 5 in response to the inputs 2, +, 3 and =, partly because those input symbols represent what they do.

However, we should not get too carried away by these similarities. The fact that the notion of representation can be used to define both thought and computers does not imply anything about whether computers can think. Consider this analogy: the notion of representation can be used to define both thought and books. It is one of the essential features of books that they contain representations. But books can’t think! Analogously, it would be foolish to argue that computers can think simply because the notion of representation can be employed in defining thought and computers.

Another way of getting carried away is to take the notion of ‘information processing’ too loosely. In a sense, thinking obviously does involve processing information – we take information in from our environments, do things to it and use it in acting in the world. But it would be wrong to move from this plus the fact that computers are known as ‘information processors’ to the conclusion
that what goes on in computers must be a kind of thinking. This relies on taking ‘information processing’ in a very loose way when applying it to human thought, whereas, in the theory of computing, ‘information processing’ has a precise definition. The question about thinking computers is (in part) about whether the information processing that computers do can have anything to do with the ‘information processing’ involved in thought. And this question cannot be answered by pointing out that the words ‘information processing’ can be applied to both computers and thought: this is known as a ‘fallacy of equivocation’.

Another bad way to argue, as we have already seen, is to say that computers can think because there must be a Turing machine table for thinking. To say that there is a Turing machine table for thinking is to say that the theory of thinking is computable. This may be true; or it may not. But, even if it were true, it obviously would not imply that thinkers are computers. Suppose astronomy were computable: this would not imply that the universe is a computer. Once again, it is crucial to emphasise the distinction between computing a function and instantiating a function.

On the other hand, we must not be too quick to dismiss the idea of thinking computers. One familiar debunking criticism is that people have always thought of the mind or brain along the lines of the latest technology; and the present infatuation with thinking computers is no exception. This is how John Searle puts the point:

Because we do not understand the brain very well we are constantly tempted to use the latest technology as a model for trying to understand it. In my childhood we always assured that the brain was a telephone switchboard . . . Sherrington, the great British neuroscientist, thought that the brain worked like a telegraph system. Freud often compared the brain to hydraulic and electro-magnetic systems. Leibniz compared it to a mill, and I am told that some of the ancient Greeks thought the brain functions like a catapult. At present, obviously, the metaphor is the digital computer.13

Looked at in this way, it seems bizarre that anyone should think that the human brain (or mind), which has been evolving for millions
of years, should have its mysteries explained in terms of ideas that arose some sixty or seventy years ago in rarified speculation about the foundations of mathematics.

But, in itself, the point proves nothing. The fact that an idea evolved in a specific historical context – and which idea didn’t? – doesn’t tell us anything about the correctness of the idea. However, there’s also a more interesting specific response to Searle’s criticism. It may be true that people have always thought of the mind by analogy with the latest technology. But the case of computers is very different from the other cases that Searle mentions. Historically, the various stages in the invention of the computer have always gone hand in hand with attempts to systematise aspects of human knowledge and intellectual skills – so it is hardly surprising that the former came to be used to model (or even explain) the latter. This is not so with hydraulics, or with mills or telephone exchanges. It’s worth dwelling on a few examples.

Along with many of his contemporaries, the great philosopher and mathematician G.W. Leibniz (1646–1716) proposed the idea of a ‘universal character’ (characteristica universalis): a mathematically precise, unambiguous language into which ideas could be translated, and by means of which the solutions to intellectual disputes could be resolved by ‘calculation’. In a famous passage, Leibniz envisages the advantages that such a language would bring:

> Once the characteristic numbers are established for most concepts, mankind will then possess a new instrument which will enhance the capabilities of the mind to a far greater extent than optical instruments strengthen the eyes, and will supersede the microscope and telescope to the same extent that reason is superior to eyesight.¹⁴

Leibniz did not get as far as actually designing the universal character (though it is interesting that he did invent binary notation). But with the striking image of this concept-calculating device we see the combination of interests which have preoccupied many computer pioneers: on the one hand, there is a desire to strip human thought of all ambiguity and unclarity; while, on the other, there is the idea of a calculus or machine that could process these skeletal thoughts.
These two interests coincide in the issues surrounding another major figure in the computer's history, the Irish logician and mathematician George Boole (1815–1864). In his book *The Laws of Thought* (1854), Boole formulated an algebra to express logical relations between statements (or propositions). Just as ordinary algebra represents mathematical relations between numbers, Boole proposed that we think of the elementary logical relations between statements or propositions – expressed by words such as ‘and’, ‘or’, etc. – as expressible in algebraic terms. Boole’s idea was to use a binary notation (1 and 0) to represent the arguments and values of the functions expressed by ‘and’, ‘or’, etc. For example, take the binary operations $1 \times 0 = 0$ and $1 + 0 = 1$. Now, suppose that 1 and 0 represent *true* and *false* respectively. Then we can think of $1 \times 0 = 0$ as saying something like, ‘If you have a truth and a falsehood, then you get a falsehood’ and $1 + 0 = 1$ as saying ‘If you have a truth or a falsehood, then you get a truth’. That is, we can think of $\times$ as representing the ‘truth-function’ *and*, and think of $+$ as representing the truth-function *or*. (Boole’s ideas will be familiar to students of elementary logic. A sentence ‘P and Q’ is true just in case P and Q are both true, and ‘P or Q’ is true just in case P is true or Q is true.)

Boole claimed that, by building up patterns of reasoning out of these simple algebraic forms, we can discover the ‘fundamental laws of those operations of the mind by which reason is performed’. That is, he aimed to systematise or codify the principles of human thought. The interesting fact is that Boole’s algebra came to play a central role in the design of modern digital computers. The behaviour of the function $\times$ in Boole’s system can be coded by a simple device known as an ‘and-gate’ (see Figure 3.8). An and-gate is a mechanism taking electric currents from two sources (X and Y) as inputs, and giving one electric current as output (Z). The device is designed in such a way that it will output a current at Z when, and

![Figure 3.8 An 'and-gate'.](image)
only when, it is receiving a current from both $X$ and $Y$. In effect, this device represents the truth function ‘and’. Similar gates are constructed for the other Boolean operations: in general, these devices are called ‘logic gates’ and are central to the design of today’s digital computers.

Eventually, the ideas of Boole and Leibniz, and other great innovators, such as the English mathematician Charles Babbage (1792–1871), gave birth to the idea of the general-purpose programmable digital computer. The idea then became reality in the theoretical discoveries of Turing and Church, and in the technological advances in electronics of the post-war years (see the chronology at the end of the book for some more details). But, as the cases of Boole and Leibniz illustrate, the ideas behind the computer, however vague, were often tied up with the general project of understanding human thought by systematising or codifying it. It was only natural, then, when the general public became aware of computers, that they were hailed as ‘electronic brains’.16

These points do not, of course, justify the claim that computers can think. But they do help us see what is wrong with some hasty reactions to this claim. In a moment we will look at some of the detailed arguments for and against it. But first we need to take a brief look at the idea of artificial intelligence itself.

**Artificial intelligence**

What is artificial intelligence? It is sometimes hard to get a straight answer to this question, as the term is applied to a number of different intellectual projects. Some people call artificial intelligence (or AI) the ‘science of thinking machines’, while others, e.g. Margaret Boden, are more ambitious, calling it ‘the science of intelligence in general’.17 To the newcomer, the word ‘intelligence’ can be a bit misleading here, because it suggests that AI is interested only in tasks which we would ordinarily classify as requiring intelligence – e.g. reading difficult books or proving theorems in mathematics. In fact, a lot of AI research concentrates on matters which we wouldn’t ordinarily think of as requiring intelligence, such as seeing three-dimensional objects or understanding simple text.
Some of the projects that go under the name of AI have little to do with thought or thinking computers. For example, there are the so-called ‘expert systems’, which are designed to give advice on specialised areas of knowledge – e.g. drug diagnosis. Sophisticated as they are, expert systems are not (and are not intended to be) thinking computers. From the philosophical point of view, they are simply souped-up encyclopaedias.

The philosophically interesting idea behind AI is the idea of building a thinking computer (or any other machine, for that matter). Obviously, this is an interesting question in itself; but, if Boden and others are right, then the project of building a thinking computer should help us understand what intelligence (or thought) is in general. That is, by building a thinking computer, we can learn about thought.

It may not be obvious how this is supposed to work. How can building a thinking computer tell us about how we think? Consider an analogy: building a flying machine. Birds fly, and so do aeroplanes; but building aeroplanes does not tell us very much about how birds manage to fly. Just as aeroplanes fly in a different way from the way birds do, so a thinking computer might think in a different way from the way we do. So how can building a thinking computer in itself tell us much about human thought?

On the other hand, this argument might strike you as odd. After all, thinking is what we do – the essence of thinking is human thinking. So how could anything think without thinking in the way we do? This is a good question. What it suggests is that, instead of starting off by building a thinking computer and then asking what this tells us about thought, we should first figure out what thinking is, and then see if we can build a machine which does this. However, once we had figured out what thinking is, building the machine wouldn’t then tell us anything we didn’t already know!

If the only kind of thinking were human thinking (whatever this means exactly) then it would only be possible to build a thinking computer if human thinking actually were computational. To establish this, we would obviously have to investigate in detail what thinking and other mental processes are. So this approach will need
a psychological theory behind it: for it will need to figure out what
the processes are before finding out what sort of computational
mechanisms carry out these processes. The approach will then in-
volve a collaboration between psychology and AI, to provide the
full theory of human mental processing. I’ll follow recent terminol-
yogy in calling this collaboration ‘cognitive science’ – this will be
topic of Chapter 4.¹⁸

On the other hand, if something could think, but not in the way
we do, then AI should not be constrained by finding out about how
human psychology works. Rather, it should just go ahead and make
a machine that performs a task with thought or intelligence, regard-
less of the way we do it. This was, in fact, the way that the earliest
AI research proceeded after its inception in the 1950s. The aim
was to produce a machine that would do things that would require
thought if done by people. They thought that doing this would not
require detailed knowledge of human psychology or physiology.¹⁹

One natural reaction to this is that this approach can only ever
produce a simulation of thought, not the real thing. For some, this
is not a problem: if the machine could do the job in an intelligent-
seeming way, then why should we worry about whether it is the
‘real thing’ or not? However, this response is not very helpful if AI
really is supposed to be the ‘science of intelligence in general’, as,
by blurring the distinction between real thought and simulation, it
won’t be able to tell us very much about how our (presumably real)
thought works. So how could anyone think that it was acceptable to
blur the distinction between real thought and its simulation?

The answer, I believe, lies in the early history of AI. In 1950,
Turing published an influential paper called ‘Computing Machinery
and Intelligence’, which provided something of the philosophical
basis of AI. In this paper, Turing addressed the question, ‘Can a ma-
chine think?’. Finding this question too vague, he proposed replacing
it with the question: ‘Under what circumstances would a machine
be mistaken for a real thinking person?’. Turing devised a test in
which a person is communicating at a distance with a machine and
another person. Very roughly, this ‘Turing test’ amounts to this: if
the first person cannot tell the difference between the conversation
with the other person and the conversation with the machine, then we can say that the machine is thinking.

There are many ramifications of this test, and spelling out in detail what it involves is rather complicated. My own view is that the assumptions behind the test are behaviouristic (see Chapter 2, ‘Understanding other minds’, p. 47) and that the test is therefore inadequate. But the only point I want to make here is that accepting the Turing test as a decisive test of intelligence makes it possible to separate the idea of something thinking from the idea of something thinking in the way humans do. If the Turing test is an adequate test of thought, then all that is relevant is how the machine performs in the test. It is not relevant whether the machine passes the test in the way that humans do. Turing’s redefinition of the question ‘Can a machine think?’ enabled AI to blur the distinction between real thought and its mere simulation.

This puts us in a position to distinguish between the two questions I raised at the beginning of this chapter:

1. Can a computer think? That is, can something think simply by being a computer?
2. Is the human mind a computer? That is, do we think (in whole or in part) by computing?

These questions are distinct, because someone taking the latter kind of AI approach could answer ‘Yes’ to 1 while remaining agnostic on 2 (‘I don’t know how we manage to think, but here’s a computer that can!’). Likewise, someone could answer ‘Yes’ to question 2 while denying that a mere computer could think. (‘Nothing could think simply by computing; but computing is part of the story about how we think.’)

Chapter 4 will deal with question 2, while the rest of this chapter will deal with some of the most interesting philosophical reasons for saying ‘No’ to question 1. For the sake of clarity, I will use the terms ‘AI’ and ‘artificial intelligence’ for the view that computers can think – but it should be borne in mind that these term are also used in other ways.
How has philosophy responded to the claims of AI, so defined? Two philosophical objections stand out:

1. Computers cannot think because thinking requires abilities that computers by their very nature can never have. Computers have to obey rules (whether algorithms or heuristics), but thinking can never be captured in a system of rules, no matter how complex. Thinking requires rather an active engagement with life, participation in a culture and ‘know-how’ of the sort that can never be formalised by rules. This is the approach taken by Hubert Dreyfus in his blistering critique of AI, *What Computers Can’t Do*.

2. Computers cannot think because they only manipulate symbols according to their *formal* features; they are not sensitive to the *meanings* of those symbols. This is the theme of a well-known argument by John Searle: the ‘Chinese room’.

In the final two sections of this chapter, I shall assess these objections.\(^2\)

**Can thinking be captured by rules and representations?**

The *Arizona Daily Star* for 31 May 1986 reported this unfortunate story:

A rookie bus driver, suspended for failing to do the right thing when a girl suffered a heart attack on his bus, was following overly strict rules that prohibit drivers from leaving their routes without permission, a union official said yesterday. ‘If the blame has to be put anywhere, put it on the rules that those people have to follow’ [said the official]. [A spokesman for the bus company defended the rules]: ‘You give them a little leeway, and where does it end up?’\(^2\)

The hapless driver’s behaviour can be used to illustrate a perennial problem for AI. By sticking to the strict rule – ‘only leave your route if you have permission’ – the driver was unable to deal with the emergency in an intelligent, thinking way. But computers must, by
Computers and thought

their very nature, stick to (at least some) strict rules – and, therefore, will never be able to behave with the kind of flexible, spontaneous responses that real thinkers have. The objection concludes that thinking cannot be a matter of using strict rules; so computers cannot think.

This objection is a bit quick. Why doesn’t the problem lie with the particular rules chosen, rather than the idea of following a rule as such? The problem with the rule in the example – ‘Only leave your route if you have permission’ – is just that it is too simple, not that it is a rule. The bus company should have given the driver a rule more like: ‘Only leave your route if you have permission, unless a medical emergency occurs on board, in which case you should drive to the nearest hospital’. This rule would deal with the heart attack case – but what if driver knows that the nearest hospital is under siege from terrorists? Or what if he knows that there is a doctor on board? Should he obey the rule telling him to go to a hospital? Probably not – but, if he shouldn’t, then should he obey some other rule? But which rule is this?

It is absurd to suppose that the bus company should present the driver with a rule like, ‘Only leave your route if you have permission, unless a medical emergency occurs on board, in which case you should drive to the nearest hospital, unless the hospital is under siege from international terrorists, or unless there is a doctor on board, or . . . in which case you should . . . ’ – we don’t even know how to fill in the dots. How can we get a rule that is specific enough to give the person following it precise directions about what to do (e.g. ‘Drive to the nearest hospital’ rather than ‘Do something sensible’) but general enough to apply to all eventualities (e.g. not just to heart attacks, but to emergencies in general)?

In his essay, ‘Politics and the English language’, George Orwell gives a number of rules for good writing (e.g. ‘Never use a long word where a short one will do’), ending with the rule: ‘Break any of these rules sooner than say anything outright barbarous’.\(^{23}\) We could add an analogous rule to the bunch of rules given to the bus driver: ‘Break any of these rules sooner than do anything stupid’. Or, more politely, ‘Use your common sense!’.
With human beings, we can generally rely on them to use their common sense, and it’s hard to know how we could understand problems like the bus driver’s without appealing (at some stage) to something like common sense, or ‘what it’s reasonable to do’. If a computer were to cope with a simple problem like this, it will have to use common sense too. But computers work by manipulating representations according to rules (algorithms or heuristics). So, for a computer to deal with the problem, common sense will have to be stored in the computer in terms of rules and representations. What AI needs, then, is a way of programming computers with explicit representations of common-sense knowledge.

This is what Dreyfus says can’t be done. He argues that human intelligence requires ‘the background of common-sense that adult human beings have by virtue of having bodies, interacting skilfully with the material world, and being trained in a culture’. And, according to Dreyfus, this common-sense knowledge cannot be represented as ‘a vast base of propositional knowledge’, i.e. as a bunch of rules and representations of facts.

The chief reason why common-sense knowledge can’t be represented as a bunch of rules and representations is that common-sense knowledge is, or depends on, a kind of know-how. Philosophers distinguish between knowing that something is the case and knowing how to do something. The first kind of knowledge is a matter of knowing facts (the sorts of things that can be written in books: e.g. knowing that Sofia is the capital of Bulgaria), while the second is a matter of having skills or abilities (e.g. being able to ride a bicycle). Many philosophers believe that an ability such as knowing how to ride a bicycle is not something that can be entirely reduced to knowledge of certain rules or principles. What you need to have when you know how to ride a bicycle is not ‘book-learning’: you don’t employ a rules such as ‘when turning a corner to the right, then lean slightly to the right with the bicycle’. You just get the hang of it, through a method of trial and error.

And, according to Dreyfus, getting the hang of it is what you do when you have general intelligence too. Knowing what a chair is is not just a matter of knowing the definition of the word ‘chair’. It also

Computers and thought

With human beings, we can generally rely on them to use their common sense, and it’s hard to know how we could understand problems like the bus driver’s without appealing (at some stage) to something like common sense, or ‘what it’s reasonable to do’. If a computer were to cope with a simple problem like this, it will have to use common sense too. But computers work by manipulating representations according to rules (algorithms or heuristics). So, for a computer to deal with the problem, common sense will have to be stored in the computer in terms of rules and representations. What AI needs, then, is a way of programming computers with explicit representations of common-sense knowledge.

This is what Dreyfus says can’t be done. He argues that human intelligence requires ‘the background of common-sense that adult human beings have by virtue of having bodies, interacting skilfully with the material world, and being trained in a culture’. And, according to Dreyfus, this common-sense knowledge cannot be represented as ‘a vast base of propositional knowledge’, i.e. as a bunch of rules and representations of facts.

The chief reason why common-sense knowledge can’t be represented as a bunch of rules and representations is that common-sense knowledge is, or depends on, a kind of know-how. Philosophers distinguish between knowing that something is the case and knowing how to do something. The first kind of knowledge is a matter of knowing facts (the sorts of things that can be written in books: e.g. knowing that Sofia is the capital of Bulgaria), while the second is a matter of having skills or abilities (e.g. being able to ride a bicycle). Many philosophers believe that an ability such as knowing how to ride a bicycle is not something that can be entirely reduced to knowledge of certain rules or principles. What you need to have when you know how to ride a bicycle is not ‘book-learning’: you don’t employ a rules such as ‘when turning a corner to the right, then lean slightly to the right with the bicycle’. You just get the hang of it, through a method of trial and error.

And, according to Dreyfus, getting the hang of it is what you do when you have general intelligence too. Knowing what a chair is is not just a matter of knowing the definition of the word ‘chair’. It also
essentially involves knowing what to do with chairs, how to sit on them, get up from them, being able to tell which objects in the room are chairs, or what sorts of things can be used as chairs if there are no chairs around – that is, the knowledge presupposes a ‘repertoire of bodily skills which may well be indefinitely large, because there seems to be an indefinitely large variety of chairs and of successful (graceful, comfortable, secure, poised, etc.) ways to sit in them’. The sort of knowledge that underlies our everyday way of living in the world either is – or rests on – practical know-how of this kind.

A computer is a device that processes representations according to rules. And representations and rules are obviously not skills. A book contains representations, and it can contain representations of rules too – but a book has no skills. If the computer has knowledge, it must be ‘knowledge that so-and-so is the case’ rather than ‘knowledge of how to do so-and-so’. So, if Dreyfus is right, and general intelligence requires common sense, and common sense is a kind of know-how, then computers cannot have common sense, and AI cannot succeed in creating a computer which has general intelligence. The two obvious ways for the defenders of AI to respond are either to reject the idea that general intelligence requires common sense or to reject the idea that common sense is know-how.

The first option is unpromising – how could there be general intelligence which did not employ common sense? – and is not popular among AI researchers. The second option is a more usual response. Defenders of this option can say that it requires hard work to make explicit the assumptions implicit in the common-sense view of the world; but this doesn’t mean that it can’t be done. In fact, it has been tried. In 1984, the Microelectronics and Computer Technology Corporation of Texas set up the CYC project, whose aim was to build up a knowledge base of a large amount of common-sense knowledge. (The name ‘CYC’ derives from ‘encyclopaedia’.) Those working on CYC attempt to enter common-sense assumptions about reality, assumptions so fundamental and obvious that they are normally overlooked (e.g. that solid objects are not generally penetrable by other solid objects etc.). The aim is to express a large percentage of common-sense knowledge in terms of about 100 million
propositions, coded into a computer. In the first six years of the project, one million propositions were in place. The director of the CYC project, Doug Lenat, once claimed that, by 1994, they would have stored between thirty and fifty per cent of common-sense knowledge (or, as they call it, 'consensus reality').

The ambitions behind schemes like CYC have been heavily criticised by Dreyfus and others. However, even if all common-sense knowledge could be stored as a bunch of rules and representations, this would only be the beginning of AI's problems. For it is not enough for the computer merely to have the information stored; it must be able to retrieve it and use it in a way that is intelligent. It’s not enough to have an encyclopaedia – one must be able to know how to look things up in it.

Crucial here is the idea of relevance. If the computer cannot know which facts are relevant to which other facts, it will not perform well in using the common sense it has stored to solve problems. But whether one thing is relevant to another thing varies as conceptions of the world vary. The sex of a person is no longer thought to be relevant to whether they have a right to vote; but two hundred years ago it was.

Relevance goes hand in hand with a sense of what is out of place or what is exceptional or unusual. Here is what Dreyfus says about a program intended for understanding stories about restaurants:

> [T]he program has not understood a restaurant story the way people in our culture do, until it can answer such simple questions as: When the waiter came to the table did he wear clothes? Did he walk forward or backward? Did the customer eat his food with his mouth or his ear? If the program answers 'I don't know', we feel that all its right answers were tricks or lucky guesses and that it has not understood anything of our everyday restaurant behaviour.

Dreyfus argues that it is only because we have a way of living in the world that is based on skills and interaction with things (rather than the representation of propositional knowledge or ‘knowledge that so-and-so’) that we are able to know what sorts of things are out of place, and what is relevant to what.
Computers and thought

There is much more to Dreyfus’s critique of AI than this brief summary suggests – but I hope this gives an idea of the general line of attack. The problems raised by Dreyfus are sometimes grouped under the heading of the ‘frame problem’, and they raise some of the most difficult issues for the traditional approach to AI, the kind of AI described in this chapter. There are a number of ways of responding to Dreyfus. One response is that of the CYC project: to try and meet Dreyfus’s challenge by itemising ‘consensus reality’. Another response is to concede that ‘classical’ AI, based on rules and representations, has failed to capture the abilities fundamental to thought – AI needs a radically different approach. In Chapter 4, I shall outline an example of this approach, known as ‘connectionism’. Another response, of course, is to throw up one’s hands in despair, and give up the whole project of making a thinking machine. At the very least, Dreyfus’s arguments present a challenge to the research programme of AI: the challenge is to represent common-sense knowledge in terms of rules and representations. And, at most, the arguments signal the ultimate breakdown of the idea that the essence of thought is manipulating symbols according to rules. Whichever view one takes, I think that the case made by Dreyfus licenses a certain amount of scepticism about the idea of building a thinking computer.

The Chinese room

Dreyfus argues that conventional AI programs don’t stand a chance of producing anything that will succeed in passing for general intelligence – e.g. plausibly passing the Turing test. John Searle takes a different approach. He allows, for the sake of argument, that an AI program could pass the Turing test. But he then argues that, even if it did, it would only be a simulation of thinking, not the real thing.

To establish his conclusion, Searle uses a thought experiment which he calls the ‘Chinese room’. He imagines himself to be inside a room with two windows – let’s label them I and O respectively. Through the I window come pieces of paper with complex markings
on them. In the room is a huge book written in English, in which is written instructions of the form, ‘Whenever you get a piece of paper through the I window with these kinds of markings on it, do certain things to it, and pass a piece of paper with those kind of markings on it through the O window’. There is also a pile of pieces of paper with markings inside the room.

Now suppose the markings are in fact Chinese characters – those coming through the I window are questions, and those going through the O window are sensible answers to the questions. The situation now resembles the set-up inside a computer: a bunch of rules (the program) operates on symbols, giving out certain symbols through the output window in response to other symbols through the input window.

Searle accepts for the sake of argument that, with a suitable program, the set-up could pass the Turing test. From outside the room, Chinese speakers might think that they were having a conversation with the person in the room. But, in fact, the person in the room (Searle) does not understand Chinese. Searle is just manipulating the symbols according to their form (roughly, their shape) – he has no idea what the symbols mean. The Chinese room is therefore supposed to show that running a computer program can never constitute genuine understanding or thought, as all computers can do is manipulate symbols according to their form.

The general structure of Searle’s argument is as follows:

1. Computer programs are purely formal or ‘syntactic’: roughly, they are sensitive only to the ‘shapes’ of the symbols they process.
2. Genuine understanding (and, by extension, all thought) is sensitive to the meaning (or ‘semantics’) of symbols.
3. Form (or syntax) can never constitute, or be sufficient for, meaning (or semantics).
4. Therefore, running a computer program can never be sufficient for understanding or thought.

The core of Searle's argument is premise 3. Premises 1 and 2
are supposed to be uncontroversial, and the defence for premise 3 is provided by the Chinese room thought experiment. (The terms ‘syntax’ and ‘semantics’ will be explained in more detail in Chapter 4. For the moment, take them as meaning ‘form’ and ‘meaning’ respectively.)

The obvious response to Searle’s argument is that the analogy does not work. Searle argues that the computer does not understand Chinese because in the Chinese room he does not understand Chinese. But his critics respond that this is not what AI should say. Searle-in-the-room is analogous to only a part of the computer, not to the computer itself. The computer itself is analogous to Searle + the room + the rules + the other bits of paper (the data). So, the critics say, Searle is proposing that AI claims that a computer understands because a part of it understands: but no-one working in AI would say that. Rather, they would say that the whole room (i.e. the whole computer) understands Chinese.

Searle can’t resist poking fun at the idea that a room can understand – but, of course, this is philosophically irrelevant. His serious response to this criticism is this: suppose I memorise the whole of the rules and the data. I can then do all the things I did inside the room, except that because I have memorised the rules and the data, I can do it outside the room. But I still don’t understand Chinese. So the appeal to the room’s understanding does not answer the point.

Some critics object to this by saying that memorising the rules and data is not a trivial task – who is to say that once you have done this you wouldn’t understand? They argue that it is failure of imagination on Searle’s part that makes him rule out this possibility. (I will return to this below.)

Another way of objecting to Searle here is to say that if Searle had not just memorised the rules and the data, but also started acting in the world of Chinese people, then it is plausible that he would, before too long, come to realise what these symbols mean. Suppose that the data concerned a restaurant conversation (in the style of some real AI programs), and Searle was actually a waiter in a Chinese restaurant. He would come to see, for example, that a certain symbol was always associated with requests for fried rice,
another one with requests for shark-fin dumplings, and so on. And
this would be the beginning (in some way) of coming to see what
they mean.

Searle’s objection to this is that the defender of AI has now con-
ceded his point: it is not enough for understanding that a program
is running, you need interaction with the world for genuine under-
standing. But the original idea of AI, he claims, was that running a
program was enough on its own for understanding. So this response
effectively concedes that the main idea behind AI is mistaken.

Strictly speaking, Searle is right here. If you say that, in order to
think, you need to interact with the world then you have abandoned
the idea that a computer can think simply because it is a computer.
But notice that this does not mean that computation is not involved
in thinking at some level. Someone who has performed the (perhaps
practically impossible) task of memorising the rules and the data is
still manipulating symbols in a rule-governed or algorithmic way.
It’s just that he or she needs to interact with the world to give these
symbols meaning. (‘Interact with the world’ is, of course, very vague.
Something more will be said about it in Chapter 5.) So Searle’s argu-
ment does not touch the general idea of cognitive science: the idea
that thinking might be performing computations, even though that
is not all there is to it. Searle is quite aware of this, and has also
provided a separate argument against cognitive science, aspects of
which I shall look at in Chapter 4.

What conclusion should we draw about Searle’s argument?
One point on which I think he is quite correct is his premise 3 in
the above argument: syntax is not enough for semantics. That is,
symbols do not ‘interpret themselves’. This is, in effect, a bald state-
ment of the problem of representation itself. If it were false, then
in a sense there would be no problem of representation. Does this
mean that there can be no explanation of how symbols mean what
they do? Not necessarily – some explanations will be examined in
Chapter 5. But we must always be careful that, when we are giving
such an explanation, we are not surreptitiously introducing what
we are trying to explain (understanding, meaning, semantics, etc.). I
take this to be one main lesson of Searle’s argument against AI.
However, some philosophers have questioned whether Searle is even entitled to this premise. The eliminative materialists Paul and Patricia Churchland use a physical analogy to illustrate this point. Suppose someone accepted (i) that electricity and magnetism were forces and (ii) that the essential property of light is luminance. Then they might argue (iii) that forces cannot be sufficient for, or cannot constitute, luminance. They may support this by the following thought experiment (the ‘Luminous room’). Imagine someone in a dark room waving a magnet around. This will generate electromagnetic waves but, no matter how fast she waves the magnet around, the room will stay dark. The conclusion is drawn that light cannot be electromagnetic radiation.

But light is electromagnetic radiation, so what has gone wrong? The Churchlands say that the mistake is in the third premise: forces cannot be sufficient for, or cannot constitute, luminance. This premise is false, and the Luminous room thought experiment cannot establish its truth. Likewise, they claim that the fault in Searle’s argument lies in its third premise, the claim that syntax is not sufficient for semantics, and that appeal to the Chinese room cannot establish its truth. For the Churchlands, whether syntax is sufficient for semantics is an empirical, scientific question, and not one that can be settled on the basis of imaginative thought experiments like the Chinese room:

Goethe found it inconceivable that small particles by themselves could constitute or be sufficient for the objective phenomenon of light. Even in this century, there have been people who found it beyond imagining that inanimate matter by itself, and however organised, could ever constitute or be sufficient for life. Plainly, what people can or cannot imagine often has nothing to do with what is or is not the case, even where the people involved are highly intelligent.33

This is a version of the objection that Searle is hamstrung by the limits of what he can imagine. In response, Searle has denied that it is, or could be, an empirical question whether syntax is sufficient for semantics – so the Luminous room is not a good analogy. To understand this response, we need to know a little bit more about
the notions of syntax and semantics, and how they might apply to the mind. This will be one of the aims of Chapter 4.

**Conclusion: can a computer think?**

So what should we make of AI and the idea of thinking computers? In 1965, one of the pioneers of AI, Herbert Simon, predicted that ‘machines will be capable, within twenty years, of doing any work that a man can do’. Almost forty years later, there still seems no chance that this prediction will be fulfilled. Is this a problem-in-principle for AI, or is it just a matter of more time and more money?

Dreyfus and Searle think that it is a problem-in-principle. The upshot of Dreyfus’s argument was, at the very least, this: if a computer is going to have *general* intelligence – i.e. be capable of reasoning about any kind of subject matter – then it has to have common-sense knowledge. The issue now for AI is whether common-sense knowledge could be represented in terms of rules and representations. So far, all attempts to do this have failed.

The lesson of Searle’s argument, it seems to me, is rather different. Searle’s argument itself begs the question against AI by (in effect) just denying its central thesis – that thinking is formal symbol manipulation. But Searle’s assumption, nonetheless, seems to me to be correct. I argued that the proper response to Searle’s argument is: sure, Searle-in-the-room, or the room alone, cannot understand Chinese. But, if you let the outside world have some impact on the room, meaning or ‘semantics’ might begin to get a foothold. But, of course, this response concedes that thinking cannot be simply symbol manipulation. Nothing can think simply by being a computer.

However, this does not mean that the idea of computation cannot apply in any way to the mind. For it could be true that nothing can think *simply* by being a computer, and also true that the way we think is *partly* by computing. This idea will be discussed in the next chapter.
Further reading

The mechanisms of thought

The central idea of the mechanical view of the mind is that the mind is a part of nature, something which has a regular, law-governed causal structure. It is another thing to say that the causal structure of the mind is also a computational structure – that thinking is computing. However, many believers in the mechanical mind believe in the computational mind too. In fact, the association between thinking and computation is as old as the mechanical world picture itself:

When a man reasoneth, hee does nothing else but conceive a summe totall, from Addition of parcels; or conceive a remainder, from Substraction of one summe from another: which (if it be done by Words) is conceiving of the consequence of the names of all the parts, to the name of the whole; or from the names of the whole and one part, to the name of the other part . . . Out of which we may define (that is to say determine,) what that is, which is meant by this word Reason, when we reckon it amongst the Faculties of the mind. For Reason, in this sense, is nothing but Reckoning (that is, Adding and Substracting) of the Consequences of generall names agreed upon, for the marking and signifying of our thoughts; I say marking them, when we reckon by ourselves; and signifying, when we demonstrate, or approve our reckonings to other men.¹

This is an excerpt from Thomas Hobbes’s Leviathan (1651). Hobbes’s idea that reasoning is ‘reckoning’ (i.e. calculation) has struck some writers as a prefiguration of the computational view of thought.² The aim of this chapter is to consider this computational view.

As I emphasised in Chapter 3, the computational view of thought is distinct from the claim that something can think simply by being a computer of a certain sort. Even if we denied that anything could think just by computing, we could hold that our thoughts
The mechanisms of thought

have a computational basis. That is, we could think that some of our mental states and processes are, in some way, computational, without thinking that the idea of computation exhausts the nature of thought.

The idea that some mental states and processes are computational is one that is dominant in current philosophy of mind and in cognitive psychology, and, for this reason at least, it is an idea worth exploring in detail. But, before discussing these theories, we need to know which mental phenomena could plausibly be considered computational. Only then shall we know of which phenomena these theories could be true.

Cognition, computation and functionalism

I have spoken about the idea that the mind is a computer; but we now need to be a bit more precise. In our discussion of mental phenomena in Chapter 1 (‘Brentano’s thesis’, see p. 36) we uncovered a dispute about whether all mental states are representational (or exhibit intentionality). Some philosophers think that some mental states – such as bodily sensations, for example – have non-representational properties, known as ‘qualia’. From this viewpoint, then, not all mental states are representational. If this view is right it will not be possible for the whole mind to be a computer, because computation is defined in terms of representation – remember that a computer is a device which processes representations in a systematic way. So only those mental states which are purely representational could be candidates for being computational states. The alternative view (known as ‘representationalism’ or ‘intentionalism’) says that all mental states, in all their aspects, are representational in nature. Based on this view, there is no obstacle in principle to all mental states being computational in nature.

I will not adjudicate this dispute here, but will return to it briefly in Chapter 6. My strategy in this chapter will be to make the best case for the computational theory of the mind, i.e. to consider the strongest examples of mental states and processes that have the most plausible claim to be computational in nature, and the
arguments that there are such computational states and processes. We can then see how far these arguments apply to all other mental states. In one way, this is just good philosophical method: one should always assess a theory in its most plausible version. No-one is interested in a critique of a caricature. But, in this case, the argument for the computational nature of representational mental states is of independent interest, whatever one thinks of the view that says that all mental states are computational. So, for the time being, we will ignore the question of whether there can be a computational theory of pain.4

A brief digression is now needed on a matter of philosophical history. Those readers who are familiar with the functionalist philosophy of mind of the 1960s may find this confusing. For wasn’t the aim of this theory to show that mental states could be classified by their Turing machine tables, and wasn’t pain the paradigm example used (input = tissue damage; output = moaning/complaining behaviour)? These philosophers may have been wrong about the mind being a Turing machine, but surely they cannot have been as confused as I am saying that they were? However, I’m not saying they were confused. As I see it, the idea that mental states have machine tables was a reaction against the materialist theory that tied mental states too closely to particular kinds of brain states (‘Pain = C-fibre firing’ etc.). So a Turing machine table was one way of giving a relatively abstract specification of mental state types that did not pin them down to particular neural structures. Many kinds of different physical entity could be in the same mental state – the point of the machine table analogy was to show how this could be.5 But, as we saw in Chapter 3 – ‘Instantiating a function and computing a function’ (p. 102) – we need to distinguish between the idea that a transition between states can be described by a Turing machine table and the idea that a transition between states actually involves computation. To distinguish between these ideas, we needed to appeal to the idea of representation: computers process representations, while (for example) the solar system does not. It follows that we must distinguish between the functionalist theory of mind – which says that the mind is defined by its causal
The mechanisms of thought

structure – and the computational theory of mind – which says that
this causal structure is computational, i.e. a disciplined series of
transitions among representations. This distinction is easy to see, of
course, because not all causal structures are computations.

Let’s return to the question of scope of the computational theory
of mind. I said that it is controversial whether pains are purely
representational, and therefore equally controversial whether there
can be a purely computational theory of pains. So which mental
states and processes could be more plausible examples of computa-
tional states and processes? The answer is now obvious: those states
which are essentially purely representational in nature. In Chapter
1, I claimed that beliefs and desires (the propositional attitudes) are
like that. Their essence is to represent the world, and, although they
often appear in consciousness, it is not essential to them that they
are conscious. There is no reason to think, at least from the perspec-
tive of common-sense psychology, that they have any properties
other than their representational ones. A belief’s nature is exhausted
by how it represents the world to be, and the properties it has as a
consequence of that. So beliefs look like the best candidates, if there
are any, to be computational states of mind.

The main claim of what is sometimes called the computational
theory of cognition is that these representational states are related
to one another in a computational way. That is, they are related
to each other in something like the way that the representational
states of a computer are: they are processed by means of algorithmic
(and perhaps heuristic) rules. The term ‘cognition’ indicates that the
concern of the theory is with cognitive processes, such as reasoning
and inference, processes that link cognitive states such as belief.
The computational theory of cognition is, therefore, the philosophi-
cal basis of cognitive science (see Chapter 3, ‘Thinking computers’,
p. 109, for the idea of cognitive science).

Another term for this theory is the representational theory of
mind. This term is less appropriate than ‘the computational theory
of cognition’, for at least two reasons. The first is that it purports
to describe the whole mind, which, as we have seen, is problematic.
The second is that the idea that states of mind represent the world
The mechanisms of thought

is, in itself, a very innocuous idea: almost all theories of the mind can accept that the mind ‘represents’ the world in some sense. What not all theories will accept is that the mind contains representations. Jean-Paul Sartre, for instance, said that ‘representations . . . are idols invented by the psychologists.’ A theory of the mind could accept the simple truism that the mind ‘represents the world’ without holding that the mind ‘contains representations’.

What does it mean to say that the mind ‘contains’ representations? In outline it means this: in thinkers’ minds there are distinct states which stand for things in the world. For example, I am presently thinking about my imminent trip to Budapest. According to the computational theory of the mind, there is in me – in my head – a state which represents my visit to Budapest. (Similarly: there is, on the hard disk of my computer, a file – a complex state of the computer – which represents this chapter.)

This might remind you of the controversial theory of ideas as ‘pictures in the head’ which we dismissed in Chapter 1. But the computational theory is not committed to pictures in the head: there are many kinds of representation other than pictures. This raises the question: what does the computational theory of cognition say that these mental representations are?

There are a number of answers to this question; the rest of the chapter will sketch the most influential answers. I shall begin with the view that has provoked the most debate for the last twenty years: the idea that mental representations are, quite literally, words and sentences in a language: the ‘language of thought’.

The language of thought

We often express our thoughts in words, and we often think in words, silently, to ourselves. Though it is implausible to say that all thought is impossible without language, it is undeniable that the languages we speak give us the ability formulate extremely complex thoughts. (It is hard to imagine how someone could think about, say, postmodernism without being able to speak a language.) But this is not what people mean when they say that we think in a language of thought.
The mechanisms of thought

What they mean is that when you have a thought – say a belief that *the price of property is rising again* – there is (literally) written in your head a sentence which means the same as the English sentence ‘The price of property is rising again’. This sentence in your head is not itself (normally) considered to be an English sentence, or a sentence of any public language. It is rather a sentence of a postulated mental language: the language of thought, sometimes abbreviated to LOT, and sometimes called Mentalese. The idea is that it is a plausible scientific or empirical hypothesis to suppose that there is such a mental language, and that cognitive science should work on this assumption and attempt to discover Mentalese.

Those encountering this theory for the first time may well find it very bizarre: why should anyone want to believe it? But, before answering this, there is a prior question: what exactly does the Mentalese hypothesis mean?

We could divide this question into two other questions:

What does it mean to say that a symbol, any symbol, is written in someone’s head?

What does it mean to say that a sentence is written in someone’s head?

We can address these questions by returning to the nature of symbols in general. Perhaps, when we first think about words and other symbols (e.g. pictures), we think of them as visually detectable: we see words on the page, traffic signs and so on. But, of course, in the case of words, it is equally common to hear sentences when we hear other people speaking. And many of us are familiar with other ways of storing and transmitting sentences: through radio waves, patterns on magnetic tape, and in the magnetic disks and electronic circuitry of a computer.

There are many ways, then, in which symbols can be stored and transmitted. Indeed, there are many ways in which the very same symbols can be stored, transmitted or (as I shall say) realised. The English sentence, ‘The man who broke the bank at Monte Carlo died in misery’ can be written, spoken, or stored on magnetic tape or a computer disk. But, in some sense, it is still the same sentence. We
can make things absolutely precise here if we distinguish between *types* and *tokens* of words and sentences. In the list of words ‘Est! Est! Est!’ the same type of word appears three times: there are, as philosophers and linguists say, three *tokens* of the same *type*. In our example of a sentence, the same sentence-*type* has many physical *tokens*, and the tokens can realised in very different ways.

I shall call these different ways of storing different tokens of the same type of sentence the different *media* in which they are realised. Written English words are one medium, spoken English words are another and words on magnetic tape yet another. The same sentence can be realised in many different media. However, for the discussion that follows, we need another distinction. We need to distinguish between not just the different media in which the same *symbols* can be stored, but also the different ways in which the same *message* or the same *content* can be stored.

Consider a road sign with a schematic picture in a red triangle of two children holding hands. The message this sign conveys is: ‘Beware! Children crossing!’. Compare this with a verbal sign that says in English: ‘Beware! Children crossing!’. These two signs express the same message, but in very different ways. This difference is not captured by the idea of a medium, as that term was meant to express the difference between the different ways in which the same (for example) English sentence can be realised by different physical materials. But, in the case of the road sign, we don’t have a sentence at all.

I’ll call this sort of difference in the way a message can be stored a difference in the *vehicle* of representation. The same message can be stored in different vehicles, and these vehicles can be ‘realised’ in different media. The most obvious distinction between vehicles of representation is that which can be made between sentences and pictures, though there are other kinds. For example, some philosophers have claimed that there is a kind of natural representation, which they call ‘indication’. This is the kind of representation in which the rings of a tree, for example, represent or indicate the tree’s age.7 This is clearly neither linguistic nor pictorial representation: a different kind of vehicle is involved. (See Chapter 5, ‘Causal theories
of mental representation’, p. 175.) We shall encounter another kind of vehicle in the section ‘Brainy computers’, below (p. 159).

Now we have the distinction between the medium and vehicle of representation, we can begin to formulate the Mentalese hypothesis. The hypothesis says that sentences are written in the head. This means that, whenever someone believes, say, that prices are rising, the vehicle of this thought is a sentence. And the medium in which this sentence is realised is the neural structure of the brain. The rough idea behind this second statement is this: think of the brain as a computer, with its neurons and synapses making up its ‘primitive processors’. To make this vivid, think of neurons, the constituent cells of the brain, as rather like the logic gates of Chapter 3: they emit an output signal (‘fire’) when their inputs are of the appropriate kind. Then we can suppose that combinations of these primitive processors (in some way) make up the sentence of Mentalese whose translation into English is ‘Prices are rising’.

So much for the first question. The second question was: suppose there are representations in the head; what does it mean to think of these representations as sentences? That is, why should there be a language of thought, rather than some other system of representation (e.g. pictures in the head)?

Syntax and semantics

To say that a system of representation is a language is to say that its elements (sentences and words) have a syntactic and semantic structure. We met the terms ‘syntax’ and ‘semantics’ in our discussion of Searle’s Chinese room argument, and it is now time to say more about them. (You should be aware that what follows is only a sketch, and, like so many terms in this area, ‘syntax’ and ‘semantics’ are quite controversial terms, used in subtly different ways by different authors. Here I only mean to capture the uncontroversial outlines.)

Essentially, syntactic features of words and sentences in a language are those that relate to their form rather than their meaning. A theory of syntax for a language will tell us what the basic kinds of expression are in the language, and which combinations of
The mechanisms of thought

expressions are legitimate in the language – that is, which combinations of expressions are grammatical or ‘well formed’. For example, it is a syntactic feature of the complex expression ‘the Pope’ that it is a noun phrase, and that it can only legitimately occur in sentences in certain positions: ‘The Pope leads a jolly life’ is grammatical, but ‘Life leads a jolly the Pope’ is not. The task of a syntactic theory is to say what the fundamental syntactic categories are, and which rules govern the production of grammatically complex expressions from combinations of the simple expressions.

In what sense can symbols in the head have syntax? Well, certain symbols will be classified as simple symbols, and rules will operate on these symbols to produce complex symbols. The task facing the Mentalese theorist is to find these simple symbols, and the rules which operate on them. This idea is not obviously absurd – once we’ve accepted the idea of symbols in the head at all – so let’s leave syntax for the moment and move on to semantics.

Semantic features of words and sentences are those that relate to their meaning. While it is a syntactic feature of the word ‘pusillanimous’ that it is an adjective, and so can only appear in certain places in sentences, it is a semantic feature of ‘pusillanimous’ that it means . . . *pusillanimous* – that is to say, spineless, weak-willed, a pushover. A theory of meaning for a language is called a ‘semantic theory’, and ‘semantics’ is that part of linguistics which deals with the systematic study of meaning.

In effect, it is because symbols have semantic features that they are symbols at all. It is in the very nature of symbols that they stand for, or represent things; *standing for* and *representing* are semantic relations. But semantics is not just about the way that words relate to the world, it’s also about the way that words relate to one another. A sentence like ‘Cleopatra loves Anthony’ has three constituents, ‘Cleopatra’, ‘loves’ and ‘Anthony’, all of which can occur in other sentences, say ‘Cleopatra committed suicide’, ‘Desdemona loves Cassio’ and ‘Anthony deserted his duty’. Ignoring for convenience complexities introduced by metaphor, idioms, ambiguity and the fact that more than one person can share a name – not insignificant omissions, but ones that we can make at this stage – it is generally
recognised that, when these words occur in these other sentences, they have the same meaning as they do when they occurred in the original sentence.

This fact, though it might appear trivial and obvious at first, is actually very important. The meaning of sentences is determined by the meanings of their parts and their mode of combination, i.e. their syntax. So the meaning of the sentence ‘Cleopatra loves Anthony’ is entirely determined by the meanings of the constituents ‘Cleopatra’, ‘loves’ and ‘Anthony’, the order in which they occur and by the syntactic role of these words (the fact that the first and third words are nouns and the second is a verb). This means that, when we understand the meaning of a word, we can understand its contribution to any other sentence in which it occurs. And many people think that it is this fact that explains how it is that we are able to understand sentences that we have not previously encountered. For example, I doubt whether you have ever encountered this sentence before:

There are fourteen rooms in the bridge.

However odd the sentence may seem, you certainly know what it means, because you know what the constituent words mean and what their syntactic place in the sentence is. (For example, you are able to answer the following questions about the sentence: ‘What is in the bridge?’, ‘Where are the rooms?’, ‘How many rooms are there?’.) This fact about languages is called ‘semantic compositionality’. According to many philosophers and linguists, it is this feature of languages which enables us to learn them at all.8

To grasp this point, it may help to contrast a language with a representational system which is not compositional in this way: the system of coloured and patterned flags used by ships. Suppose there is one flag which means ‘yellow fever on board’, another which means ‘customs inspectors welcome’. But, given only these resources, you cannot combine your knowledge of the meanings of these symbols to produce another symbol, e.g. one that says ‘yellow fever inspectors welcome’. What is more, when you encounter a flag you have never seen before, no amount of knowledge of the other flags can help you understand it. You have to learn the meaning of
The mechanisms of thought

*each* flag individually. The difference with a language is that, even though you may learn the meanings of individual words one by one, this understanding gives you the ability to form and understand *any number* of new sentences. In fact, the number of sentences in a language is potentially infinite. But, for the reasons given, it is plain that if a language is to be learnable the number of basic significant elements (words) has to be finite. Otherwise, encountering a new sentence would always be like encountering a new flag on the ship – which it plainly isn’t.

In what sense can symbols in the head have semantic features? The answer should now be fairly obvious. They can have semantic features because they represent or stand for things in the world. If there are sentences in the head, then these sentences will have semantically significant parts (words) and these parts will refer to or apply to things in the world. What is more, the meanings of the sentences will be determined by the meanings of their parts plus their mode of combination. For the sake of simple exposition, let’s make the chauvinistic assumption that Mentalese is English. Then, to say that I believe that prices are rising is to say that there is a sentence written in my head, ‘Prices are rising’, whose meaning is determined by the meanings of the constituent words, ‘prices’, ‘are’ and ‘rising’ and by their mode of combination.

The argument for the language of thought

So, now that we have an elementary grasp of the ideas of syntax and semantics, we can say precisely what the Mentalese hypothesis is. The hypothesis is that when a thinker has a belief or desire with the content \( P \), there is a sentence (i.e. a representation with semantic and syntactic structure) that means \( P \) written in their heads. The vehicles of representation are linguistic, while the medium of representation is the neural structure of the brain.

The attentive reader will have noticed that there is something missing from this description. For, as we saw in Chapter 1, different thoughts can have the same content: I can believe that prices will fall, I can desire that prices will fall, I can hope that prices will
The mechanisms of thought

fall, and so on. The Mentalese hypothesis says that these states all involve having a sentence with the meaning *prices will fall* written in the heads of the thinkers. But surely believing that prices will fall is a very different kind of mental state from hoping that prices will fall – how does the Mentalese hypothesis explain this difference?

The short answer is: it doesn’t. A longer answer is that it is not the aim of the Mentalese hypothesis to explain the difference between belief and desire, or between belief and hope. What it aims to explain is not the difference between believing something and desiring it, but between believing (or desiring) one thing and something else. In the terminology of attitudes and contents, introduced in Chapter 1, the aim is to explain what it is to have an attitude with a certain content, not what it is to have this attitude rather than that one. Of course, believers in Mentalese do think that there will be a scientific theory of what it is to have a belief rather than a desire, but this theory will be independent of the Mentalese hypothesis itself.

We can now return to our original question: why should we believe that the vehicle of mental representation is a language? The inventor of the Mentalese hypothesis, Jerry Fodor, has advanced two influential arguments to answer this question, which I will briefly outline. The second will take a bit more exposition than the first.

The first argument relies on a comparison between the ‘compositionality’ of semantics, discussed in the previous section, and an apparently similar phenomenon in thought itself. Remember that if someone understands the English sentence ‘Cleopatra loves Anthony’, they are *ipso facto* in a position to understand other sentences containing those words, provided that they understand the other words in those sentences. At the very least, they can understand the sentence, ‘Anthony loves Cleopatra’. Similarly, Fodor claims, if someone is able to think *Cleopatra loves Anthony*, then they are also able to think *Anthony loves Cleopatra*. Whatever it takes to think the first thought, nothing more is needed to be able to think the second. Of course, they may not believe that Anthony loves Cleopatra merely because they believe that Cleopatra loves Anthony; but they can at least consider the idea that Anthony loves Cleopatra.
Fodor claims that the best explanation of this phenomenon is that thought itself has a compositional structure, and that having a compositional structure amounts to having a language of thought. Notice that he is not saying that the phenomenon *logically entails* that thought has a compositional syntax and semantics. It is possible that thought could exhibit the phenomenon without there being a language of thought – but Fodor and his followers believe that the language of thought hypothesis is the best scientific explanation of this aspect of thought.

Fodor’s second argument relies on certain assumptions about mental processes or trains of thought. This argument will help us see in what sense exactly the Mentalese hypothesis is a *computational* theory of cognition or thought. To get a grip on this argument, consider the difference between the following two thought-processes:

1. Suppose I want to go to Ljubljana, and I can get there by train or by bus. The bus is cheaper, but the train will be more pleasant, and leaves at a more convenient time. However, the train takes longer, because the bus route is more direct. But the train involves a stop in Vienna, which I would like to visit. I weigh up the factors on each side, and I decide to sacrifice time and money for the more salubrious environment of the train and the attractions of a visit to Vienna.

2. Suppose I want to go to Ljubljana, and I can get there by train or by bus. I wake up in the morning and look out the window. I see two pigeons on the rooftop opposite. Pigeons always make me think of Venice, which I once visited on a train. So I decide to go by train.

My conclusion is the same in each case – but the methods are very different. In the first case, I use the information I have, weighing up the relative desirability of the different outcomes. In short, I *reason*: I make a reasoned decision from the information available. In the second case, I simply associate ideas. There is no particularly rational connection between pigeons, Venice and trains – the ideas just ‘come into my mind’. Fodor argues that, in order for
The mechanisms of thought

common-sense psychological explanations (of the sort we examined in Chapter 2) to work, much more of our thinking must be like that in the first case than that in the second. In Chapter 2, I defended the idea that, if we are to make sense of people’s behaviour, we must see them as pursuing goals by reasoning, drawing sensible conclusions from what they believe and want. If all thinking was of the ‘free association’ style, it would be very hard to do this: from the outside, it would be very hard to see the connection between people’s thoughts and their behaviour. The fact that it is not very hard strongly suggests that most thinking is not free associating.

Fodor is not denying that free associating goes on. But what he is aiming to emphasise is the systematic, rational nature of many mental processes. One way in which thinking can be systematic is in the above example 1, when I am reasoning about what to do. Another is when reasoning about what to think. To take a simple example: I believe that the Irish philosopher Bishop Berkeley thought that matter is a contradictory notion. I also believe that nothing contradictory can exist, and I believe that Bishop Berkeley believed that too. I conclude that Bishop Berkeley thought that matter does not exist and that if matter does exist then he is wrong. Because I believe that matter does exist, I conclude that Bishop Berkeley was wrong. This is an example of reasoning about what to think.

Inferences like this are the subject matter of logic. Logic studies those features of inference that do not depend on the specific contents of the inferences – that is, logic studies the form of inferences. For example, from the point of view of logic, the following simple inferences can be seen as having the same form or structure:

If I will visit Ljubljana, I will go by train.

I will visit Ljubljana.

Therefore: I will go by train.

and

If matter exists, Bishop Berkeley was wrong.
The mechanisms of thought

Matter exists.

Therefore: Bishop Berkeley was wrong.

What logicians do is represent the form of inferences like these, regardless of what any particular instance of them might mean, that is to say regardless of their specific content. For example: using the letters $P$ and $Q$ to represent the constituent sentences above, and the arrow $\rightarrow$ to represent ‘if . . . then . . . ’, we can represent the form of the above inferences as follows:

$$P \rightarrow Q$$

$$P$$

Therefore: $Q$

Logicians call this particular form of inference *modus ponens*. Arguments with this form hold good precisely because they have this form. What does ‘holds good’ mean? Not that its premises and conclusions will always be true: logic alone cannot give you truths about the nature of the world. Rather, the sense in which it holds good is that it is *truth-preserving*: if you start off with truths in your premises, you will preserve truth in your conclusion. A form of argument that preserves truth is what logicians call a *valid* argument: if your premises are true, then your conclusions must be true.

Defenders of the Mentalese hypothesis think that many transitions among mental states – many mental processes, or trains of thought, or inferences – are like this: they are *truth-preserving because of their form*. When people reason logically from premises to conclusions, the conclusions they come up with will be true if the premises they started with are true, and they use a truth-preserving method or rule. So, if this is true, the items which mental processes process had better have form. And this, of course, is what the Mentalese hypothesis claims: the sentences in our head have a syntactic form, and it is because they have this syntactic form that they can interact in systematic mental processes.

To understand this idea, we need to understand the link between three concepts: semantics, syntax/form and causation. The link can
The mechanisms of thought

be spelled out by using the comparison with computers. Symbols in a computer have semantic and ‘formal’ properties, but the processors in the computer are sensitive to only the formal properties. How? Remember the simple example of the ‘and-gate’ (Chapter 3: ‘Thinking computers’, p. 109). The causal properties of the and-gate are those properties to which the machine is causally sensitive: the machine will output an electric current when and only when it takes electric currents from both inputs. But this causal process encodes the formal structure of ‘and’: a sentence ‘P and Q’ will be true when and only when P is true and Q is true. And this formal structure mirrors the meaning of ‘and’: any word with that formal structure will have the meaning ‘and’ has. So the causal properties of the device mirror its formal properties, and these in turn mirror the semantic properties of ‘and’. This is what enables the computer to perform computations by performing purely causal operations.

Likewise with the language of thought. When someone reasons from their belief that P → Q (i.e. if P then Q) and their belief that P to the conclusion Q, there is inside them a causal process which mirrors the purely formal relation of modus ponens. So the elements in the causal process must have components which mirror the component parts of the inference, i.e. form must have a causal basis.

All we need to do now is make the link between syntax and semantics. The essential point here is much more complicated, but it can be illustrated with the simple form of logical argument discussed above. Modus ponens is valid because of its form: but this purely formal feature of the argument does guarantee something about its semantic properties. What it guarantees is that the semantic property of truth is preserved: if you start your reasoning with truths, and only use an argument of the modus ponens form, then you will be guaranteed to get only truths at the end of your reasoning. So reasoning with this purely formal rule will ensure that your semantic properties will be ‘mirrored’ by the formal properties. Syntax does not create semantics, but it keeps it in tow. As John Haugeland has put it, ‘if you take care of the syntax, the semantics will take care of itself’.10

We now have the link that we wanted between three things: the
The mechanisms of thought

semantic features of mental representations, their syntactic features and their causal features. Fodor's claim is that, by thinking of mental processes as computations, we can link these three kinds of feature together:

Computers show us how to connect semantic with causal properties for symbols . . . You connect the causal properties of a symbol with its semantic properties via its syntax . . . we can think of it syntactic structure as an abstract feature of its . . . shape. Because, to all intents and purposes, syntax reduces to shape, and because the shape of a symbol is a potential determinant of its causal role, it is fairly easy . . . to imagine symbol tokens interacting causally in virtue of their syntactic structures. The syntax of a symbol might determine [its] causes and effects . . . in much the same way that the geometry of a key determines which locks it will open.11

What the hypothesis gives us, then, is a way of connecting the representational properties of thought (its content) with its causal nature. The link is provided by the idea of a mental syntax that is realised in the causal structure of the brain, rather as the formal properties of a computer's symbols are realised in the causal structure of the computer. The syntactic or formal properties of the representations in a computer are interpretable as calculations, or inferences, or pieces of reasoning – they are semantically interpretable – and this provides us with a link between causal properties and semantic properties. Similarly, it is hoped, with the link between the content and causation of thought.

The Mentalese hypothesis is a computational hypothesis because it invokes representations which are manipulated or processed according to formal rules. It doesn’t say what these rules are: this is a matter for cognitive science to discover. I used the example of a simple logical rule, for simplicity of exposition, but it is no part of the Mentalese hypothesis that the only rules that will be discovered will be the laws of logic.

What might these other rules be? Defenders of the hypothesis often appeal to computational theories of vision as an illustration of the sort of explanation that they have in mind. The computational
The mechanisms of thought

theory of vision sees the task for the psychology of vision as that of explaining how our visual system produces a representation of the 3D visual environment from the distribution of light on the retina. The theory claims that the visual system does this by creating a representation of the pattern of light on the retina and making computational inferences in various stages, to arrive finally at the 3D representation. In order to do this, the system has to have built into it the ‘knowledge’ of certain rules or principles, to make the inference from one stage to the next. (In this short book I cannot give a detailed description of this sort of theory, but there are many good introductions available: see the Further reading section, p. 167.)

Of course, we cannot state these principles ourselves without knowledge of the theory. The principles are not accessible to introspection. But, according to the theory, we do ‘know’ these principles in the sense that they are represented somehow in our minds, whether or not we can access them by means of introspection. This idea originates in Noam Chomsky’s linguistic theory.12 Chomsky has argued for many years that the best way to explain our linguistic performance is to postulate that we have knowledge of the fundamental grammatical rules of our language. But the fact that we have this knowledge does not imply that we can bring it into our conscious minds. The Mentalese hypothesis proposes that this is how things are with the rules governing thought-processes. As I mentioned in Chapter 2, defenders of this sort of knowledge sometimes call it ‘tacit knowledge’.13

Notice, finally, that the Mentalese hypothesis is not committed to the idea that all of mental life involves processing linguistic representations. It is consistent with the hypothesis to hold, for example, that sensations are not wholly representational. But it is also consistent with the hypothesis to hold that there could be processes that ‘manipulate’ non-linguistic representations. One particularly active area of research in cognitive science, for example, is the study of mental imagery. If I ask you the question ‘Do frogs have lips?’ there is a good chance that you will consider this question by forming a mental image and mentally ‘inspecting’ it. According to some cognitive scientists, there is a sense in which there actually are
The mechanisms of thought

representations in your head which have a pictorial structure, which can be ‘rotated’, ‘scanned’ and ‘inspected’. Perhaps there are pictures in the head after all! So a cognitive scientist could consistently hold that there are such pictorial representations while still maintaining that the vehicles of reasoning are linguistic. (For suggestions on how to pursue this fascinating topic, see the Further reading section, p. 167.)

The modularity of mind

The argument for the Mentalese hypothesis, as I have presented it, is an example of what is called an inference to the best explanation. A certain undeniable or obvious fact is pointed out, and then it is shown that this obvious fact would make sense, given the truth of our hypothesis. Given that there is no better rival hypothesis, this gives us a reason to believe our hypothesis. This is the general shape of an inference to the best explanation, and it is a central and valuable method of explanation that is used in science. In our case, the obvious fact is the systematic nature of the semantic properties of thought: the general fact that is revealed by phenomena described in the Anthony and Cleopatra example above. Fodor’s argument relies on the fact that mental processes exploit this systematicity in the rational transitions from thought to thought. Trains of thought have a rational structure, and they have causal outcomes which are dependent on this rational structure. The best explanation of this, Fodor claims, is that there is an inner medium of representation – Mentalese, the language of thought (LOT) – with the semantic and syntactic properties described above.

But in many areas of the mind, though there is good reason to suppose that there is mental representation, there does not seem to be anything like a fully rational process going on. What should a defender of Mentalese say about this? Take the case of visual perception, for example. As we saw in the previous section, psychologists who study vision tend to treat the visual system as processing representations – from the representation of the distribution of light reflected onto the retina, to the eventual construction of a representation of the objective scene around the perceiver. But there is a
The mechanisms of thought

sense in which visual perception is not a rational process in the way in which thought is, and this would remove the immediate motivation for postulating a language of thought for visual perception. This point is a way of introducing a further important proposal of Fodor’s about the structure of the mind: the proposal that the mind is modular.

We are all familiar with the phenomenon of a visual illusion, where something visually seems to be the way it is not. Consider the Mach bands (named after the great physicist Ernst Mach, who discovered the illusion) depicted in Figure 4.1. On first seeing these, your initial reaction will be that each stripe is not uniformly grey, but that the shade becomes slightly lighter on the side of the stripe nearer the darker stripe. This is the way it looks. But on closer inspection you can see that each stripe is actually uniformly grey. Isolate one of the stripes between two pieces of paper, and this becomes obvious. So, now you know, and therefore believe, that each stripe is uniformly coloured grey. But it still looks as if they are not, despite what you know! For our present purposes, what is interesting is not so much that your visual system is deceived by

Figure 4.1 Mach bands. The stripes are actually of a uniform shade of grey, but they seem lighter at the edges that are closer to the darker stripes.
The mechanisms of thought

this illusion, but that the illusion persists even when you know that it is an illusion.

One thing this clearly shows is that perceiving is not the same as judging or believing. For, if perceiving were just a form of believing, then your current psychological state would be a conflict between believing that the stripes are uniformly coloured and believing that the stripes are not uniformly coloured. This would be a case of explicitly contradictory belief: you believe that something is the case and that it is not the case, simultaneously and consciously. No rational person can live with such explicit contradictions in their beliefs. It is impossible to know what conclusions can be reasonably drawn from the belief that P and not-P; and it is impossible to know how to act on the basis of such a belief. Therefore, the rational person attempts to eliminate explicit contradictions in his or her belief, on pain of irrationality. Faced with a situation where one is inclined to believe one thing and its opposite, one has to make up one’s mind, and go for one or the other. One is obliged, as a rational thinker, to aim to eliminate inconsistency in one’s thought.

But, in the case of the Mach bands illusion, there is no question of eliminating the inconsistency. There is nothing one can do to stop the lines looking as if they were unevenly shaded, no matter how hard one tries. If perception were just a form of belief, as some have argued, then this would be a case of irrationality. But it plainly isn’t: one has no difficulty, once apprised of the facts, in knowing what conclusions to draw from this combination of belief and perception, and in knowing how to act on it. One’s rationality is not at all undermined by this illusory experience. Therefore, perception is not belief.

What kind of overall picture of the mind is suggested by phenomena such as this? Jerry Fodor has argued that they provide evidence for the view that the visual system is a relatively isolated ‘mental module’, an information-processing system which is, in important respects, independent from the ‘central system’ responsible for belief and reasoning. Fodor holds also that other ‘input systems’ – for example, the systems which process linguistic input – are modular in this way. The thesis that the mind has this overall
The mechanisms of thought

structure – central system plus modules – is called the thesis of the modularity of mind. This modularity thesis has been very influential in psychology and cognitive science. Many psychologists believe in some version of the thesis, though it is controversial how much of the mind is modular. Here, I will briefly try and give some sense of the nature and scope of the thesis.

What exactly is a module? On Fodor’s original introduction of the notion, a module is a functionally defined part of the mind whose most important feature is what he calls informational encapsulation.17 (‘Functionally defined’ here means defined in terms of what it does, rather than what it is made out of.) A cognitive mechanism is informationally encapsulated when it systematically does not have access to all the information in a thinker’s mind when performing its characteristic operations. An informationally encapsulated computational mechanism may deliver as output the conclusion P, even if somewhere else in the subject’s mind there is the knowledge that not-P: but, what is more, the knowledge that not-P cannot change the output of the computational mechanism. To use a phrase of Zenon Pylyshyn’s, the mechanism’s output is not ‘cognitively penetrable’: it cannot be penetrated by other areas of the cognitive system, specifically by beliefs and knowledge.

The point is easy to understand when applied to a concrete example. No matter how hard you try, you cannot see the stripes in the Mach bands as uniformly shaded grey, even though you know that they are. The knowledge that you have about the way in which they are actually coloured cannot penetrate the output of your visual system. Fodor’s explanation for this is that the visual system (and other ‘input systems’) are informationally encapsulated, and that is the essence of what it is to be a module. Of course, illusions like the Mach bands need detailed explanation in terms of the detailed working of the visual system; Fodor’s point is that this explanation must take place within the context of a modular view of perception, rather than according to a view of perception which treats it as a kind of cognition or belief.

Fodor contrasts modules such as the visual system with ‘central systems’ or ‘central mind’. Central mind is the home of the normal
The mechanisms of thought

propositional attitudes, the states which participate in reasoning and inference, and intellectual and practical problem solving. Where belief is concerned, the structure of the belief system allows one to use information in reasoning that comes from any part of one’s stock of beliefs and knowledge. Of course, people are irrational, they have blind spots, and they deceive themselves. But the point is that these shortcomings are personal idiosyncrasies; they are not built into the belief system itself. The situation is different with visual processing and the other modules.

As a result of this informational encapsulation, various other properties ‘cluster’ around a module. Modules are domain specific: they use information only from a restricted cognitive domain, i.e. they can’t represent just any proposition about the world, unlike thought. The visual system represents only visually perceptible properties of the environment, for example. Also, modules tend to be mandatory: one can’t help seeing things a certain way, hearing a sentence as grammatical or not, etc. They are innate, not acquired; we are born with them. They may well be hard-wired, i.e. realised in a dedicated part of the brain that, if damaged, cannot be replaced by activity elsewhere in the brain. And they are fast, much faster than processes in central mind. These features all come about as a result of informational encapsulation: ‘what encapsulation buys is speed; and it buys speed at the price of intelligence’.18 Just as he contrasts the modules with central mind, Fodor likes to compare them with reflexes. A reflex, such as the blink reflex, is fast and unconstrained by what one might believe or know – this makes perfect sense, given the blink reflex’s function of protecting the eyes. You don’t want to stop to think about whether that wasp is really going to fly into your eye; your eye short-circuits thought. Modules are not reflexes, as they contain states with representational content; but the comparison makes it clear why all (or some of, or most of) the above properties tend to be associated with what Fodor calls modules. (It is worth mentioning that Chomsky has used the term ‘module’ in a different way: for him, a module is just body of innate knowledge. Chomsky’s idea of a module involves no commitment to informational encapsulation.19)
Since Fodor proposed this thesis in 1983, there has been an active debate among psychologists and philosophers about the extent of modularity. How many modules are there? Fodor was originally very cautious: he suggested that each perceptual system is modular, and that there was a module for language processing. But others have been more adventurous: some have argued, for example, that the tacit knowledge of the theory of other minds is an innate module, on the hypothesis that it can be damaged – and thus damage interpersonal interactions – while leaving much of general intelligence intact. (It is often claimed that this is the source of autism: autistic children typically have high general intelligence but lack ‘theory of mind’.) Others go even further and argue that the mind is ‘massively modular’: there is a distinct, more or less encapsulated mechanism for each kind of cognitive task. There might be a module for recognising birds, a module for beliefs about cookery and maybe even a module for philosophy. And so on.

If massive modularity is true, then there is no distinction between central mind and modules, simply because there is no such thing as central mind: no such thing as a non-domain-specific, unencapsulated, cognitive mechanism. Our mental faculties would be much more fragmented than they seem from the point of view of common-sense psychology. Suppose I have a module for thinking about food (I am not saying anyone has proposed there is such a module, but we can use this as an example to illustrate the thesis). Could it really be true that my reasoning about what to cook for dinner is restricted to information available to this food module alone? Doesn’t it make sense to suppose that it must also be sensitive to information about whether I want to go out later, whether I want to lose weight, whether I want to impress and please my friends and so on? Maybe these could be thought of as pieces of information belonging to the same module; but how, then, do we distinguish one module from another?

Furthermore, as Fodor has shown, the thesis is subject to a quite general problem: if there is no general-purpose, non-domain-specific cognitive mechanism, then how does the mind decide, for any given input, which module should deal with that input? The decision
The mechanisms of thought

procedure for assigning input to modules cannot itself be modular, as it must select from information which is going to be treated by many different modules. It looks as if the massive modularity thesis will end up undermining itself.\(^{21}\)

Problems for the language of thought

The discussion of modularity was something of a digression. But I hope it has given us a sense of the relationship between the modularity thesis and the computational theory of cognition. Now let’s return to the Mentalese hypothesis. The hypothesis seems to many people – both in philosophy and outside – to be an outlandish piece of speculation, easily refuted by philosophical argument or by empirical evidence. In fact, it seems to me that matters are not as simple as this, and the hypothesis can defend itself against the strongest of these attacks. I will here discuss two of the most interesting criticisms of the Mentalese hypothesis, as they are of general philosophical interest, and they will help us to refine our understanding of the hypothesis. Despite the power of these arguments, however, I believe that Fodor can defend himself against his critics.

1 Homunculi again?

We have talked quite freely about sentences in the head, and their interpretations. In using the comparison with computers, I said that the computer’s electronic states are ‘interpretable’ as calculation, or as the processing of sentences. We have a pretty good idea how these states can have semantic content or meaning: they are designed by computer engineers and programmers in such a way as to be interpretable by their users. The semantic features of a computer’s states are therefore derived from the intentions of the designers and users of the computer.\(^{22}\)

Or consider sentences in a natural language like English. As we saw in Chapter 2, there is a deep problem about how sentences get their meaning. But one influential idea is that sentences get their meaning because of the way they are used by speakers in conversa-
The mechanisms of thought

tion, writing, soliloquy, etc. What exactly this means doesn’t matter here; what matters is the plausible idea that sentences come to mean what they do because of the uses speakers put them to.

But what about Mentalese? How do its sentences get to mean something? They clearly do not get their meaning by being consciously used by thinkers, otherwise we could know from introspection whether the Mentalese hypothesis was true. But to say that they get their meaning by being used by something else seems to give rise to what is sometimes called the ‘homunculus fallacy’. This argument could be expressed as follows.

Suppose we explain the meaning of Mentalese sentences by saying that there is a sub-system or homunculus in the brain that uses these sentences. How does the homunculus manage to use these sentences? Here, there is a dilemma. On the one hand, if we say that the homunculus uses the sentences by having its own inner language, then we have to explain how the sentences in this language get their meaning: but appealing to another smaller homunculus clearly only raises the same problem again. But, on the other hand, if we say that the homunculus manages to use these sentences without having an inner language, then why can’t we say the same about people?

The problem is this. Either the sentences of Mentalese get their meaning in the same way that public language sentences do, or they get their meaning in some other way. If they get their meaning in the same way, then we seem to be stuck with a regress of homunculi. But if they get their meaning in a different way, then we need to say what that way is. Either way, we have no explanation of how Mentalese sentences mean anything.

Some writers think that this sort of objection cripples the Mentalese hypothesis. But, in a more positive light, it could be seen not as an objection but as a challenge: explain the semantic features of the language of thought, without appealing to the ideas you are trying to explain. There are two possible ways to respond to the challenge. The first would be to accept the homunculus metaphor but deny that homunculi necessarily give rise to a vicious regress. This idea originates from an idea of Daniel Dennett’s (mentioned on p. 107 in ‘Automatic algorithms’, Chapter 3). What we need to ensure
The mechanisms of thought

is that, when we postulate one homunculus to explain the capacities of another, we do not attribute to it the capacities we are trying to explain. Any homunculus we postulate must be more stupid than the one whose behaviour we are trying to explain, otherwise we have not explained anything.24

However, as Searle has pointed out, if, at the bottom computational level, the homunculus is still manipulating symbols, these symbols must have a meaning, even if they are just 1s and 0s. And, if there is a really stupid homunculus below this level – think of it as one who just moves the tape of a Turing machine from side to side – then it is still hard to see how the mere existence of this tape-moving homunculus alone can explain the fact that the 1s and 0s have meaning. The problem of getting from meaningless activity to meaningful activity just seems to arise again at this lowest level.

The second, more popular, approach to the challenge is to say that Mentalese sentences have their meaning in a very different kind of way to the way that public language sentences do. Public language sentences may acquire their meaning by being intentionally used by speakers, but this cannot be how it is with Mentalese. The sentences of Mentalese, as Fodor has said, have their effects on a thinker’s behaviour ‘without having to be understood’.25 They are not understood because they are not consciously used at all: the conscious use of sentences stops in the outside world. There are no homunculi who use sentences in the way that we do.

This does avoid the objection. But now of course, the question is: how do Mentalese sentences get their meaning? This is a hard question, which has been the subject of intense debate. It will be considered in Chapter 5.

2 Following a rule vs. conforming to a rule

Searle also endorses the second objection that I shall mention here, which derives from some well-known objections raised by W.V. Quine to Chomsky’s thesis that we have tacit knowledge of grammar.26 Remember that the Mentalese hypothesis says that thinking is rule governed, and even that, in some ‘tacit’ sense, we
The mechanisms of thought

know these rules. But how is this claim to be distinguished from the claim that our thinking conforms to a rule, that we merely act and think in accordance with a rule? As we saw in Chapter 3, the planets conform to Kepler’s laws, but do not ‘follow’ or ‘know’ these laws in any literal sense. The objection is that, if the Mentalese hypothesis cannot explain the difference between following a rule and merely conforming to a rule, then much of its substance is lost.

Notice that it will not help to say that the mind contains an explicit representation of the rule (i.e. a sentence stating the rule). For a representation of a rule is just another representation: we would need another rule to connect this rule-representation to the other representations to which it applies. And to say that this ‘higher’ rule must be explicitly represented just raises the same problem again.

The question is not ‘What makes the Mentalese hypothesis computational?’ – it is computational because sentences of Mentalese are representations that are governed by computational rules. The question is ‘What sense can be given to the idea of “governed by computational rules”?’. I think the defender of Mentalese should respond by explaining what it is for a rule to be implicitly represented in the causal structure of mental processes. To say that rules are implicitly represented is to say that the behaviour of a thinker can be better explained on the assumption that the thinker tacitly knows a rule than on the assumption that he or she does not. What now needs to be explained is the idea of tacit knowledge. But I must leave this to the reader’s further investigations, as there is a further point about rules that needs to be made.

Some people might be concerned by the use of a logical example in my exposition of the Mentalese hypothesis. For it is plain that human beings do not always reason in accordance with the laws of logic. But, if rules such as modus ponens are supposed to causally govern actual thinking, how can this be? An alternative is to say that the rules of logic do not describe human thinking, but rather prescribe ways in which humans ought to think. (This is sometimes put by saying that the rules of logic are ‘normative’ rather than ‘descriptive.’) One way of putting the difference is to say that, if we were to find many exceptions to physical laws, we would think that
The mechanisms of thought

we had got the laws wrong in some way. But if we find a person behaving illogically we do not think that we have got the laws of logic wrong; rather, we label the person irrational or illogical.

This point does not arise just because the example was taken from logic. We could equally well take an example from the theory of practical reasoning. Suppose the rule is ‘act rationally’. When we find someone consistently acting in a way that conflicts with this rule, we might do one of two things: we might reject the rule as a true description of that person’s behaviour or we might keep the rule and say that the person is irrational. The challenge I am considering says we should do the latter.

The Mentalese hypothesis cannot allow that the rules governing thought are normative in this way. So what should it say? I think it should say two things, one defensive and one more aggressive. The defensive claim is that the hypothesis is not at this stage committed to the idea that the normative laws of logic and rationality are the rules which operate on Mentalese sentences. It is a scientific/empirical question as to which rules govern the mind, and the rules we have mentioned may not be among them. The aggressive claim is that, even if something like these rules did govern the mind, they would be idealisations from the complex, messy actual behaviour of minds. To state the rules properly, we would have to add a clause saying ‘all other things are equal’ (called a ceteris paribus clause). But this does not undermine the scientific nature of Mentalese, because ceteris paribus clauses are used in other scientific theories too.28

These worries about rules are fundamental to the Mentalese hypothesis. The whole crux of the hypothesis is that thinking is the rule-governed manipulation of mental sentences. As one of the main arguments for syntactic structure was the idea that mental processes are systematic, it turns out that the crucial question is: is human thinking rule governed in the sense in which the hypothesis says? Are there laws of thought for cognitive science to discover? Indeed, can the nature of human thought be captured in terms of rules or laws at all?

We have encountered this question before – when discussing
Dreyfus’s objections to artificial intelligence. Dreyfus is opposed to the idea of human thinking that inspires orthodox cognitive science and the Mentalese hypothesis: the idea that human thought can be exhaustively captured by a set of rules and representations. In opposition to this, he argues that a practical activity, a network of bodily skills that cannot be reduced to rules, underlies human intelligence. In the previous chapter, we looked at a number of ways in which AI could respond to these criticisms. However, some people think it is possible to accept some of Dreyfus’s criticisms without giving up a broadly computational view of the mind.29 This possibility might seem very hard to grasp – the purpose of the next section is to explain it.

‘Brainy’ computers

Think of the things computers are good at. Computers have been built that excel at fast calculation, the efficient storage of information and its rapid retrieval. Artificial intelligence programs have been designed that can play excellent chess, and can prove theorems in logic. But it is often remarked that, compared with computers, most human beings are not very good at calculating, playing chess, proving theorems or rapid information retrieval of the sort achieved by modern databases (most of us would be hopeless at memorising something like our address books: that’s why we use computers to do this). What is more, the sorts of tasks which come quite naturally to humans – such as recognising faces, perceiving linguistic structures and practical bodily skills – have been precisely those tasks which traditional AI and cognitive science have found hardest to simulate and/or explain.

Traditional cognitive science and AI have regarded these problems as challenges, requiring more research time and more finely tuned algorithms and heuristics. But since around the middle of the 1980s, these problems have come to be seen as symptomatic of a more general weakness in the orthodox approach in cognitive science, as another computational approach has begun to gain influence. Many people think that this new approach – known
as ‘connectionism’ – represents a serious alternative to traditional accounts like Fodor’s Mentalese hypothesis. Whether this is true is a very controversial question – but what does seem to be true is that the existence of connectionism threatens Fodor’s ‘pragmatic’ defence of Mentalese, that it is ‘the only game in town’. (In *The Language of Thought*, Fodor quotes the famous remark of Lyndon B. Johnson: ‘I’m the only president you’ve got’.) But the existence of connectionism also challenges the argument for Mentalese outlined above, based on an inference to the best explanation; as, if there are other good explanations in the offing, then Mentalese has to fight harder to show that it is the best.

The issues surrounding connectionism are extremely technical, and it would be beyond the scope of this book to give a detailed account of this debate. So the purpose of this final section is merely to give an impression of these issues, in order to show how there could be a kind of computational theory of the mind that is an alternative to the Mentalese hypothesis and its kin. Those who are not interested in this rather more technical issue can skip this section and move straight to the next chapter. Those who want to pursue it further can follow up the suggestions in the Further reading section. I’ll begin by saying what defines ‘orthodox’ approaches, and how connectionist models differ.

The Mentalese hypothesis construes computation in what is now called an orthodox or ‘classical’ way. Machines with a classical computational ‘architecture’ (sometimes called a von Neumann architecture) standardly involve a distinction between *data-structures* (essentially, explicit representations of pieces of information) and *rules* or *programs* which operate on these structures. Representations in classical architectures have syntactic structure, and the rules apply to the representations in virtue of this structure, as I illustrated above. Also, representations are typically processed in series rather than in parallel – all this means is that the program operates on the data in a step-by-step way (as represented, for example, by the program’s flow-chart) as opposed to carrying out lots of operations at the same time. (This sort of computational architecture is sometimes called the ‘rules and representations’ picture; applied to
AI, John Haugeland has labelled it ‘GOFAI’, an acronym for ‘good old-fashioned AI’.\(^3\)

Connectionist architecture is very different. A connectionist machine is a network consisting of a large number of units or nodes: simple input–output devices which are capable of being excited or inhibited by electric currents. Each unit is connected to other units (hence ‘connectionism’), and the connections between the units can be of various strengths, or ‘weights’. Whether a unit gives a certain output – standardly, an electric current – depends on its firing threshold (the minimum input required to turn it on) and the strengths of its connections to other units. That is, a unit is turned on when the strengths of its connections to the other units exceeds its threshold. This in turn will affect the strength of all its connections to other units, and therefore whether those units are turned on.

Units are arranged in ‘layers’ – there is normally an input layer of units, an output layer and one or more layers of ‘hidden’ units, mediating between input and output. (See Figure 4.2 for an idealised diagram.) Computing in connectionist networks involves first fixing

![Diagram of a connectionist network](https://example.com/connectionist-diagram.png)

*Figure 4.2 Diagram of a connectionist network.*
The mechanisms of thought

the input units in some combination of ‘ons’ and ‘offs’. Because the input units are connected to the other units, fixing their initial state causes a pattern of activation to spread through the network. This pattern of activation is determined by the strengths of the connections between the units and the way the input units are fixed. Eventually, the network ‘settles down’ into a stable state – the units have brought themselves into equilibrium with the fixed states of the input units – and the output can be read off the layer of output units. One notable feature is that this process happens in parallel – i.e. the changes in the states of the network are taking place across the network all at once, not in a step-by-step way.

For this to be computation, of course, we need to interpret the layers of input and output units as representing something. Just as in a classical machine, representations are assigned to connectionist networks by the people who build them; but the ways in which they are assigned are very different. Connectionist representation can be of two kinds: localist interpretations, in which each unit is assigned a feature that it represents; or distributed interpretations, in which it is the state of the network as a whole that represents. Distributed representation is often claimed to be one of the distinctive features of connectionism – the approach itself is often known as parallel distributed processing or PDP. I’ll say a bit more about distributed representation in a moment.

A distinctive feature of connectionist networks is that it seems that they can be ‘trained to learn’. Suppose you wanted to get the machine to produce a certain output in response to input (for example, there is a network which converts the present tense of English verbs into their past tense forms). Start by feeding in the input, and let a fairly random pattern of activation spread throughout the machine. Check the output, and see how far it diverges from the desired output. Then repeatedly alter the strengths of the connections between the units until the output unit is the desired one. This kind of trial-and-error method is known as ‘training the network’. The interesting thing is that, once a network has been trained, it can apply the trial and error process itself to new samples, with some success. This is how connectionist systems ‘learn’ things.
Connectionist machines are sometimes called ‘neural networks’, and this name gives a clue to part of their appeal for some cognitive scientists. With their vast number of interconnected (yet simple) units, and the variable strengths of connection between the units, they resemble the structure of the brain much more closely than any classical machine. Connectionists therefore tend to claim that their models are more biologically plausible than those with classical architecture. However, these claims can be exaggerated: there are many properties of neurons that these units do not have.32

Many connectionists also claim that their models are more psychologically plausible, i.e. connectionist networks behave in a way that is closer to the way the human mind works than classical machines do. As I mentioned above, classical computers are very bad at doing lots of the sorts of task that we find so natural – face and pattern recognition, for example. Connectionist enthusiasts often argue that these are precisely the sorts of tasks that their machines can excel at.

I hope this very sketchy picture has given you some idea of the difference between connectionist and classical cognitive science. You may be wondering, though, why connectionist machines are computers at all. Certainly, the idea of a pattern of activation spreading through a network doesn’t look much like the sort of computing we looked at in Chapter 3. Some writers insist on a strict definition of ‘computer’ in terms of symbol manipulation, and rule connectionist machines out on these grounds.33 Others are happy to see connectionist networks as instances of the very general notion of a computer, as something that transforms an input representation into an output representation in a disciplined way.34

In part, this must be an issue about terminology: everyone will agree that there is something in common between what a connectionist machine does and what a classical computer does, and everyone will agree that there are differences too. If they disagree about whether to call the similarities ‘computing’ this cannot be a matter of great importance. However, I side with those who say that connectionist machines are computers. After all, connectionist networks process input–output functions in a systematic way, by
using (localised or distributed) representations. And, when they
learn, they do so by employing ‘learning algorithms’ or rules. So
there’s enough in common to call them both computers – although
this may just be a result of the rather general definition I gave of a
computer in Chapter 3.

But this is not the interesting issue. The interesting issue is what
the fundamental differences are between connectionist machines
and classical machines, and how these differences bear on the
theory of mind. Like many issues in this area, there is no general
consensus on how this question should be answered. But I will try to
outline what I see to be the most important points.

The difference is not just that a connectionist network can be
described at the simplest computational level in terms which do not
have natural interpretations in common-sense (or scientific) psy-
chological language (e.g. as a belief that ‘passed’ is the past tense of
‘pass’). For, in a classical machine, there is a level of processing – the
level of ‘bits’ or binary digits of information – at which the symbols
processed have no natural psychological interpretation. As we
saw in Chapter 3, a computer works by breaking down the tasks it
performs into simpler and simpler tasks: at the simplest level, there
is no interpretation of the symbols processed as, say, sentences, or
as the contents of beliefs and desires.

But the appeal of classical machines was that these basic opera-
tions could be built up in a systematic way to construct complex
symbols – as it may be, words and sentences in the language of
thought – upon which computational processes operate. According
to the Mentalese hypothesis, the processes operate on the symbols
in virtue of their form or syntax. The hypothesis is that Mentalese
sentences are (a) processed ‘formally’ by the machine and (b) repre-
sentations: they are interpretable as having meaning. That is: one
and the same thing – the Mentalese sentence – is the vehicle of
computation and the vehicle of mental content.

This need not be so with connectionist networks. As Robert
Cummins puts it, ‘connectionists do not assume that the objects of
computation are the objects of semantic interpretation’. That is,
computations are performed by the network by the activation (or
The mechanisms of thought

inhibition) of units increasing (or decreasing) the strength of the connections between them. ‘Learning’ takes place when the relations between the units are systematically altered in a way that produces an output close to the target. So computation is performed at the level of simple units. But there need be no representation at this simple level: where distributed representation is involved, the states of the network as a whole are what are interpreted as representing. The vehicles of computation – the units – need not be the vehicles of representation, or psychological interpretation. The vehicles of representation can be states of the whole network.

This point can be put in terms of syntax. Suppose, for simplicity, that there is a Mentalese word, ‘dog’, which has the same syntactic and semantic features as the English word ‘dog’. Then the defender of Mentalese will say that, whenever you have a thought about dogs, the same type of syntactic structure occurs in your head. So, if you think ‘some dogs are bigger than others’ and you also think ‘there are too many dogs around here’, the word ‘dogs’ appears both times in your head. Connectionists deny that this need be so: they say that when you have these two thoughts, the mechanisms in your head need have nothing non-semantic in common. As two of the pioneers of connectionism put it, ‘the currency of our systems is not symbols, but excitation and inhibition’.37 In other words: thoughts do not have syntax.

An analogy of Scott Sturgeon’s might help to make this difference between the vehicles of computation and vehicles of representation vivid.38 Imagine a vast rectangular array of electric lights as big as a football pitch. Each individual light can glow on or off to a greater or lesser extent. By changing the illumination of each light, the whole pitch can display patterns which when seen from a distance are English sentences. One pattern might read ‘We know your secret!’, another might read ‘Buy your tickets early to avoid disappointment’. These words are created purely by altering the illumination of the individual lights – there is nothing at this level of ‘processing’ which corresponds to the syntax or semantics of the words. The word ‘your’ is displayed by one bank of lights in the first array and by another bank of lights in the second: but at the
level of ‘processing’, these banks of lights need have nothing else in common (they need not even be the same shape: consider YOUR and your). The objects of ‘processing’ (the individual lights) are not the objects of representation (the patterns on the whole pitch).

This analogy might help to give you an impression of how basic processing can produce representation without being ‘sensitive’ to the syntax of symbols. But some might think the analogy is very misleading, because it suggests that the processing at the level of units is closer to the medium of representation, rather than the vehicle (to use the terminology introduced earlier in this chapter). A classical theory will agree that its words and sentences are implemented or realised in the structure of the brain; and they can have no objections to the idea that there might be an ‘intermediate’ level of realisation in a connectionist-like structure. But they can still insist that, if cognition is systematic, then its vehicle needs to be systematic too; and, as connectionist networks are not systematic, they cannot serve as the vehicle of cognition, but only as the medium.

This is, in effect, one of the main lines of criticism pursued by Fodor and Zenon Pylyshyn against connectionism as a theory of mental processing. As we saw above, it is central to Fodor’s theory that cognition is systematic: if someone can think Anthony loves Cleopatra then they must be able to at least consider the thought that Cleopatra loves Anthony. Fodor takes this to be a fundamental fact about thought or cognition which any theory has to explain, and he thinks that a language-like mechanism can explain it: for it is built in to the very idea of compositional syntax and semantics. He and Pylyshyn then argue that there is no guarantee that connectionist networks will produce systematic representations but, if they do, they will be merely ‘implementing’ a Mentalese-style mechanism. In the terminology of this chapter: either the connectionist network will be the mere medium of a representation whose vehicle is linguistic or the network cannot behave with systematicity.

How should connectionists respond to this argument? In broad outline, they could take one of two approaches. They could either argue that cognition is not systematic in Fodor’s sense or they could
argue that while cognition is systematic, connectionist networks can be systematic too. If they take the first approach, they have to do a lot of work to show how cognition can fail to be systematic. If they take the second route, then it will be hard for them to avoid Fodor and Pylyshyn’s charge that their machines will end up merely ‘implementing’ Mentalese mechanisms.

**Conclusion: does computation explain representation?**

What conclusions should we draw about the debate between connectionism and the Mentalese hypothesis? It is important to stress that both theories are highly speculative: they suggest large-scale pictures of how the mechanisms of thought might work, but detailed theories of human reasoning are a long way in the future. Moreover, like the correctness of the computational theory of cognition in general, the issue cannot ultimately be settled philosophically. It is an empirical or scientific question whether our minds have a classical Mentalese-style architecture, a connectionist architecture or some mixture of the two – or, indeed, whether our minds have any kind of computational structure at all. But now, at least, we have some idea of what would have to be settled in the dispute between the computational theory and its rivals.

Let’s now return to the problem of representation. Where does this discussion of minds and computers leave this problem? In a sense, the problem is untouched by the computational theory of cognition. Because computation has to be defined in term of the idea of representation, the computational theory of cognition takes representation for granted. So, if we still want to explain representation, we need to look elsewhere. This will be the topic of the final chapter.

**Further reading**

The mechanisms of thought

Explaining mental representation

The last two chapters have involved something of a detour through some of the philosophical controversies surrounding the computational theory of the mind and artificial intelligence. It is now time to return to the problem of representation, introduced in Chapter 1. How has our discussion of the computational theory of the mind helped us in understanding this problem?

On the one hand, it has helped to suggest answers. For we saw that the idea of a computer illustrates how representations can also be things that have causes and effects. Also, the standard idea of a computational process – that is, a rule-governed causal process involving structured representations – enables us to see how a merely mechanical device can digest, store and process representations. And, though it may not be plausible to suppose that the whole mind is like this, in Chapter 4 we examined some ways in which thought-processes at least could be computational.

But, on the other hand, the computational theory of the mind does not, in itself, tell us what makes something a representation. The reason for this is simple: the notion of computation takes representation for granted. A computational process is, by definition, a rule-governed or systematic relation among representations. To say that some process or state is computational does not explain its representational nature, it presupposes it. Or, to put it another way, to say merely that there is a language of thought is not to say what makes the words and sentences in it mean anything.

This brings us, then, to the topic of this final chapter – how should the mechanical view of the mind explain representation?

Reduction and definition

The mechanical view of the mind is a naturalistic view – it treats the mind as part of nature, where ‘nature’ is understood as the subject
Explaining mental representation

matter of natural science. In this view, an explanation of the mind needs an explanation of how the mind fits into the rest of nature, so understood. In this book, I have been considering the more specific question: how can mental representation fit into the rest of nature? One way to answer this question is simply to accept representation as a basic natural feature of the world. There are many kinds of natural objects and natural features of the world – organisms, hormones, electric charge, chemical elements, etc. – and some of them are basic while others are not. By ‘basic’, I mean that they need not, or cannot, be further explained in terms of other facts or concepts. In physics, for example, the concept of energy is accepted as basic – there is no explanation of energy in terms of any other concepts. Why not take representation, then, as one of the basic features of the world?

This view could defend itself by appealing to the idea that representation is a theoretical notion – a notion whose nature is explained by the theories in which it belongs (rather like the notion electron). Remember the discussion of theories in Chapter 2. There, we saw that, according to one influential view, the nature of a theoretical entity is exhausted by the things the theory says about it. The same sorts of things can be said about representation: representation is just what the theory of representation tells us it is. There is no need to ask any further questions about its nature.

I shall return to this sort of theory at the end of the chapter. But, to most naturalistic philosophers, it is an unsatisfactory approach to the problem. They would say that representation is still a philosophically problematic concept, and we get no real understanding of it by accepting it (or the theory of it) as primitive. They would say: consider what we know about the rest of nature. We know, for example, that light is electromagnetic radiation. In learning how light is related to other electromagnetic phenomena, we find out something ‘deeper’ of the nature of light. We find out what light fundamentally is. This is the sort of understanding that we need of the notion of representation. Jerry Fodor puts the point in this way:
Explaining mental representation

I suppose sooner or later the physicists will complete the catalogue they’ve been compiling of the ultimate and irreducible properties of things. When they do, the [microphysical properties] spin, charm, and charge will perhaps appear on their list. But aboutness surely won’t: intentionality simply doesn’t go that deep.¹

Whatever we think about such views, it is clear that what Fodor and many other philosophers want is an explanation of intentionality in other terms – that is, in terms of concepts other than the concepts of representation. There are a number of ways in which this could be done. One obvious way would be to give necessary and sufficient conditions for claims of the form ‘X represents Y’. (The concepts of necessary and sufficient conditions were explained in Chapter 1.) Necessary and sufficient conditions for ‘X represents Y’ will be those conditions which hold when, and only when, X represents Y – described in terms that don’t mention the concept of representation at all. To put this precisely and neatly, we need the technical term ‘if and only if’. (Remember that, as ‘A if B’ expresses the idea that B is a sufficient condition for A and ‘A only if B’ expresses the idea that B is a necessary condition for A, we can express the idea that B is a necessary and sufficient condition for A by saying ‘A if and only if B’.)

The present claim about representation can then be described by the principle of the following form, which I shall label (R):²

(R) X represents Y if and only if _________

So, for example, in Chapter 1 I considered the idea that the basis of pictorial representation might be resemblance. We could express this as follows:

X (pictorially) represents Y if and only if X resembles Y.

Here the ‘_________’ is filled in by the idea of resemblance. (Of course, we found this idea inadequate – but here it is just being used as an example.)

The principle (R) defines the concept of representation by reducing it to other concepts. For this reason, it can be called a reductive definition of the concept of representation. Reductive definitions have
Explaining mental representation

been thought by many philosophers to give the nature or essence of a concept. But it is important to be aware that not all definitions are reductive. To illustrate this, let’s take the example of colour. Many naturalistic philosophers have wanted to give a reductive account of the place of colours in the natural world. Often, they have tried to formulate a reductive definition of what it is for an object to have a certain colour in terms of (say) the wavelength of the light it reflects. So they might express such a definition as follows:

1. X is red if and only if X reflects light of wavelength $N$, where $N$ is some number.

There is a fascinating debate about whether colours can be reductively defined in (anything like) this way. But my present concern is not with the theory of colour, but just to use it as an illustration of a point about definition. For some philosophers think that it is a mistake to aim for a reductive definition of colour at all. They think that the most we can really expect is a definition of colour in terms of how things look to normal perceivers. For instance:

2. X is red if and only if X looks red to normal perceivers in normal circumstances.

This is not a wholly reductive definition, because being red is not defined in other terms – the right-hand side of the definition mentions *looking red*. Some philosophers think something similar about the notion of representation or content – we should not expect to be able to define the concept of representation in other terms. I shall return to this at the end of the chapter.

**Conceptual and naturalistic definitions**

The example of colour serves to illustrate another point about definitions in terms of necessary and sufficient conditions. One reason why one might prefer 2 (the non-reductive definition of being red) to 1 is that 2 does not go beyond what we *know* when we under-
stand the concept of the colour red. As soon as we understand the concept of red, we can understand that red things look red to normal perceivers in normal circumstances, and that things which look red to normal perceivers in normal circumstances are red. But, in order to understand the concept of red, we don’t need to know anything about wavelengths of light or reflectance. So 1 tells us more than what we know when we know the concept.

We can put this by saying that 2, unlike 1, attempts to give conceptually necessary and sufficient conditions for being red. It gives those conditions which in some sense ‘define the concept’ of red. On the other hand, 1 does not define the concept of red. There surely are people who have the concept of red, who can use the concept red and yet who have never heard of wavelengths, let alone know that light is electromagnetic radiation. Instead, 1 gives what we could call naturalistic necessary and sufficient conditions of being red: it tells us in scientific terms what it is for something to be red. (Naturalistic necessary and sufficient conditions for being red are sometimes called ‘nomological’ conditions, as they characterise the concept in terms of natural laws – ‘nomos’ is the Greek for ‘law’.)

The idea of a naturalistic necessary (or sufficient) condition should not be hard to grasp in general. When we say that you need oxygen to stay alive, we are saying that oxygen is a necessary condition for life: if you are alive, then you are getting oxygen. But this is arguably not part of the concept of life, because there is nothing wrong with saying that something could be alive in a way that does not require oxygen. We can make sense of the idea that there is life on Mars without supposing that there is oxygen on Mars. So the presence of oxygen is a naturalistic necessary condition for life, rather than a conceptual necessary condition.

Some philosophers doubt whether there are any interesting reductive conceptually necessary and sufficient conditions – that is, conditions which give reductive conceptual definitions of concepts. They argue, inspired by Quine or Wittgenstein, that even the sorts of examples which have been traditionally used to illustrate the idea of conceptual necessary and sufficient conditions are problematic. Take Quine’s famous example of the concept bachelor. It looks
Explaining mental representation

extremely plausible at first that the concept of a bachelor is the concept of an unmarried man. To put it in terms of necessary and sufficient conditions:

X is a bachelor if and only if X is an unmarried man.

This looks reasonable, until we consider some odd cases. Does a bachelor have to be a man who has never married, or can the term apply to someone who is divorced or widowed? What about a fifteen-year-old male youth – is he a bachelor, or do you have to be over a certain age? If so, what age? Is the Pope a bachelor, or does a religious vocation prevent his inclusion? Was Jesus a bachelor? Or does the concept only apply to men at certain times and in certain cultures?

Of course, we could always legislate that bachelors are all those men above the age of twenty-five who have never been married and who do not belong to any religious order . . . and so on, as we chose. But the point is that we are legislating – we are making a new decision, and thus going beyond what we know when we know the concept. The surprising truth is that the concept does not, by itself, tell us where to draw the line around all bachelors. The argument says that because many (perhaps most) concepts are like this, it therefore begins to look impossible to give informative conceptual necessary and sufficient conditions for these concepts.5

Now I don’t want to enter this debate about the nature of concepts here. I mention the issue only to illustrate a way in which one might be suspicious of the idea of conceptually necessary and sufficient conditions which are also reductive. The idea is that it is hard enough to get such conditions for a fairly simple concept like bachelor – so how much harder will it will be for concepts like mental representation?

Many philosophers have drawn the conclusion that if we want reductive definitions we should instead look for naturalistic necessary and sufficient conditions for the concept of mental representation. The ‘_______’ in our principle (R) would be filled in by a description of the naturalistic facts (e.g. physical, chemical or biological facts) which underpin representation. These would be naturalistic reductive necessary and sufficient conditions for representation.
Explaining mental representation

What could these conditions be? Jerry Fodor has said that only two options have ever been seriously proposed: resemblance and causation. That is, either the ‘_________’ is filled in by some claim about X resembling Y in some way or it is filled in by some claim about the causal relation between X and Y. To be sure, there may be other possibilities for reductive theories of representation – but Fodor is certainly right that resemblance and causation have been the main ideas actually appealed to by naturalist philosophers. In Chapter 1, I discussed, and dismissed, resemblance theories of pictorial representation. A resemblance theory for other kinds of representation (e.g. words) seems even less plausible, and the idea that all representation can be explained in terms of pictorial representation is, as we saw, hopeless. So most of the rest of this chapter will outline the elements of the main alternative: causal theories of representation.

Causal theories of mental representation

In a way, it is obvious that naturalist philosophers would try to explain mental representation in terms of causation. For part of naturalism is what I am calling the causal picture of states of mind: the mind fits into the causal order of the world and its behaviour is covered by the same sorts of causal laws as other things in nature (see Chapter 2). The question we have been addressing on behalf of the naturalists is: how does mental representation fit into all this? It is almost obvious that they should answer that representation is ultimately a causal relation – or, more precisely, that it is based on certain causal relations.

In fact, it seems that common-sense already recognises one sense in which representation or meaning can be a causal concept. H.P. Grice noticed that the concept of meaning is used in very different ways in the following two sentences:

(a) A red light means stop.
(b) Those spots mean measles.
Explaining mental representation

It is a truism that the fact that a red light means *stop* is a matter of convention. There is nothing about the colour red that connects it to stopping. Amber would have done just as well. On the other hand, the fact that the spots ‘mean’ measles is not a matter of convention. Unlike the red light, there *is* something about the spots that connects them to measles. The spots are symptoms of measles, and because of this can be used to detect the presence of measles. Red lights, on the other hand, are not symptoms of stopping. The spots are, if you like, natural signs or natural representations of measles: they *stand for* the presence of measles. Likewise, we say that ‘smoke means fire’, ‘those clouds mean thunder’ – and what we mean is that smoke and clouds are natural signs (or representations) of fire and thunder. Grice called this kind of representation ‘natural meaning’.

Natural meaning is just a kind of causal correlation. Just as the spots are the effects of measles, the smoke is an effect of the fire and the clouds are the effects of a cause that is also the cause of thunder. The clouds, the smoke and the spots are all *correlated* causally with the things that we say they ‘mean’: thunder, fire and measles. Certain causal theories of mental representation think that causal correlations between thoughts and the things they represent can form the natural basis of representation. But how, exactly?

It would of course be too simple to say that X represents Y when, and only when, Y causes X. (This is what Fodor calls the ‘crude causal theory’.) I can have thoughts about sheep, but it is certainly not true that each of these thoughts is caused by a sheep. When a child gets to sleep at night by counting sheep, these thoughts about sheep need not be caused by sheep. Conversely, it doesn’t have to be true that when a mental state is caused by a sheep, it will represent a sheep. On a dark night, a startled sheep might cause me to be afraid – but I might be afraid because I represent the sheep as a dog, or a ghost.

In both these cases, what is missing is the idea that there is any natural and/or regular causal link between sheep and the thoughts in question. It is mere convention that associates *sheep* with the desire to get to sleep, and it is a mere accident that a sheep caused me to be afraid. If mental representation is going to be based on causal
explaining mental representation

correlation, it will have to be based on natural regularities – as with
smoke and fire – not merely on a causal connection alone.9

Let’s introduce a standard technical term for this sort of natural
regularity: call the relation between X and Y, when X is a natural
sign of Y, reliable indication. In general, X reliably indicates Y when
there is a reliable causal link between X and Y. So, smoke reliably
indicates fire, clouds reliably indicate thunder, and the spots reliably
indicate measles. Our next attempt at a theory of representation can
then be put as follows:

\[
X \text{ represents } Y \text{ if and only if } X \text{ reliably indicates } Y
\]

Applied to mental states, we can say that a mental state represents Y
if and only if there is a reliable causal correlation between this type
of mental state and Y.

An obvious initial difficulty is that we can have many kinds of
thought which are not causally correlated with anything at all. I can
think about unicorns, about Santa Claus and about other non-exist-
ent things – but these ‘things’ cannot cause anything, as they do not
exist. Also, I can think about numbers, and about other mathemati-
cal entities such as sets and functions – but, even if these things
do exist, they cannot cause anything because they certainly do not
exist in space and time. (A cause and its effects must exist in time
if one is going to precede the other.) And, finally, I can think about
events in the future – but events in the future cannot cause anything
in the present because causes must precede their effects. How can
causal theories of representation deal with these cases?

Causal theorists normally treat these sorts of cases as in some
way special, and the result of the very complicated thought-produc-
ing mechanisms we have. Let’s take things slowly, they will say:
start with the simple cases, the basic thoughts about the perceived
environment, the basic drives (for food, drink, sex, warmth, etc.).
If we can explain the representational powers of these states in
terms of a notion like indication, then we can try and deal with the
complex cases later. After all, if we can’t explain the simple cases in
terms of notions like indication, we won’t have much luck with the
complex cases. So there’s no point starting with the complex cases.
Explaining mental representation

The advantages of a causal theory of mental representation for naturalistic philosophers are obvious. Reliable indication is everywhere: wherever there is this kind of causal correlation there is indication. So, as indication is not a mysterious phenomenon, and not one unique to the mind, it would be a clear advance if we could explain mental representation in terms of it. If the suggestion works, then we would be on our way to explaining how mental representation is constituted by natural causal relations, and, ultimately, how mental representation fits into the natural world.

The problem of error

However, the ubiquity of indication also presents some of the major problems for the causal approach. For one thing (a), as representations will always indicate something, it is hard to see how they can ever misrepresent. For another (b), there are many phenomena which are reliably causally correlated with mental representations, yet which are not in any sense the items represented by them. These two problems are related – they are both features of the fact that causal theories of representation have a hard time accounting for errors in thought. This will take a little explanation.

Take the first problem, (a), first. Consider again Grice’s example of measles. We said that the spots represent measles because they are reliable indicators of measles. In general, if there are no spots, then there is no measles. But is the converse true – could there be spots without measles? That is to say, could the spots misrepresent measles? Well, someone could have similar spots, because they have some other sort of disease – smallpox, for example. But these spots would then be indicators of smallpox. So the theory would have to say that they don’t misrepresent measles – they represent what they indicate, namely smallpox.

Of course, we could make a mistake, and look at the smallpox spots and conclude: measles! But this is irrelevant. The theory is meant to explain the representational powers of our minds in terms of reliable indication – on this theory, we cannot appeal to the inter-
Explaining mental representation

interpretation we give of a phenomenon in explaining what it represents. This would get matters the wrong way round.

The problem is that, because what X represents is explained in terms of reliable indication, X cannot represent something it does not indicate. Grice made the point by observing that, where natural meaning is concerned, X means that p entails p – smoke’s meaning fire entails that there is fire. In general, it seems that, when X naturally means Y, this guarantees the existence of Y – but few mental representations guarantee the existence of what they represent. It is undeniable that our thoughts can represent something as the case even when it is not the case: error in mental representation is possible. So a theory of representation which cannot allow error can never form the basis of mental representation. For want of a better term, let’s call this the ‘misrepresentation problem’.

This problem is closely related to the other problem for the indication theory, which is known (for reasons I shall explain) as the ‘disjunction problem’. Suppose that I am able to recognise sheep – I am able to perceive sheep when sheep are around. My perceptions of sheep are representations of some sort – call them ‘S-representations’ for short – and they are reliable indicators of sheep, and the theory therefore says that they represent sheep. So far so good.

But suppose too that, in certain circumstances – say, at a distance, in bad light – I am unable to distinguish sheep from goats. And suppose that this connection is quite systematic: there is a reliable connection between goats-in-certain-circumstances and sheep perceptions. I have an S-representation when I see a goat. This looks like a clear case of misrepresentation: my S-representation misrepresents a goat as a sheep. But, if my S-representations are reliable indicators of goats-in-certain-circumstances, then why shouldn’t we say instead that they represent goats-in-certain-circumstances as well as sheep? Indeed, surely the indication theory will have to say something like this, as reliable indication alone is supposed to be the source of representation.

The problem, then, is that both sheep and goats-in-certain-circumstances are reliably indicated by S-representations. So it looks like we should say that an S-representation represents that either
Explaining mental representation

a sheep is present or a goat-in-certain-circumstances is present. The content of the representation, then, should be sheep or goat-in-certain-circumstances. This is called the ‘disjunction problem’ because logicians call the linking of two or more terms with an ‘or’ a disjunction.\(^\text{10}\)

In case you think that this sort of example is a mere philosophical fantasy, consider this real-life example from cognitive ethology. The ethologists D.L. Cheney and R.M. Seyfarth have studied the alarm calls of vervet monkeys, and have conjectured that different types of call have different meanings, depending on what the particular call is provoked by. A particular kind of call, for example, is produced in the presence of leopards, and so is labelled by them a ‘leopard alarm’. But:

[T]he meaning of leopard alarm is, from the monkey's point of view, only as precise as it needs to be. In Amboseli, where leopards hunt vervets but lions and cheetahs do not, leopard alarm could mean, 'big spotted cat that isn't a cheetah' or 'big spotted cat with the shorter legs' . . . In other areas of Africa, where cheetahs do hunt vervets, leopard alarm could mean 'leopard or cheetah'.\(^\text{11}\)

These ethologists are quite happy to attribute disjunctive contents to the monkeys' leopard alarms. The disjunction problem arises when we ask what it would be to misrepresent a cheetah as a leopard. Saying that the meaning of the alarm is ‘only as precise as it needs to be’ does not answer this question, but avoids it.

Let me summarise the structure of the two problems. The misrepresentation problem is that, if reliable indication is supposed to be a necessary condition of representation, then X cannot represent Y in the absence of Y. If it is a necessary condition for some spots to represent measles that they indicate measles, then the spots cannot represent measles in the absence of measles.

The disjunction problem is that, if reliable indication is supposed to be a sufficient condition of representation, then whatever X indicates will be represented by X. If it is a sufficient condition for an S-representation to represent a sheep that it reliably indicates sheep, then it will also be a sufficient condition for an S-representation to
Explaining mental representation

represent a goat-in-certain-circumstances that it indicates a goat-
in-certain-circumstances. Whatever is indicated by a representation
is represented by it: so the content of the S-representation will be
sheep or goat-in-certain-circumstances.

Obviously, the two problems are related. They are both aspects
of the problem that, according to the indication theory, error is
not really possible. The misrepresentation problem makes error
impossible by \textit{ruling out} the representation of some situation (mea-
sles) when the situation does not exist. The disjunction problem,
however, makes error impossible by \textit{ruling in} the representation of
too many situations (sheep-or-goats). In both cases, the indication
theory gives the wrong answer to the question ‘What does this
representation represent?’.

How can the indication theory respond to these problems? The
standard way of responding is to hold that, when something misrep-
resents, that means that conditions for representation (either inside
or outside the organism) are not perfect: as Robert Cummins puts
it, misrepresentation is malfunctioning. When conditions are ideal
then there will not be any failure to represent: spots will represent
measles in ideal conditions, and my S-representations will represent
sheep (and not goats) in ideal conditions.

The idea, then, is that representation is definable as reliable
indication in ideal conditions:

\[
X \text{ represents } Y \text{ if and only if } X \text{ is a reliable indicator of } Y \text{ in ideal conditions.}
\]

Error results from the conditions failing to be ideal in some way:
bad light, distance, impairment of the sense organs, etc. (Ideal con-
ditions are sometimes called ‘normal’ conditions.) But how should
we characterise, in general, what ideal conditions are? Obviously,
we can’t say that ideal conditions are those conditions in which
representation takes place, otherwise our account will be circular
and uninformative:

\[
X \text{ represents } Y \text{ if and only if } X \text{ reliably indicates } Y \text{ in those conditions in which } X \text{ represents } Y.
\]
Explaining mental representation

What we need is a way of specifying ideal conditions without mentioning representation.

Fred Dretske, one of the pioneers of the indication approach, tried to solve this problem by appealing to the idea of the teleological function of a representation. This is a different sense of ‘function’ from the mathematical notion described in Chapter 3: ‘teleological’ means ‘goal-directed’. Teleological functions are normally attributed to biological mechanisms, and teleological explanations are explanations in terms of teleological functions. An example of a teleological function is the heart’s function of pumping blood around the body. The idea of function is useful here because (a) it is a notion that is well understood in biology and (b) it is generally accepted that something can have a teleological function even if it is not exercising it: it is the function of the heart to pump blood around the body even when it is not actually doing so. So the idea is that X can represent Y, even when Y is not around, just in case it is X’s function to indicate Y. Ideal conditions are therefore conditions of ‘well-functioning’: conditions when everything is functioning as it should.

This suggests how the appeal to teleological functions can deal with what I am calling the misrepresentation problem. X can represent Y if it has the function of indicating Y; and it can have the function of indicating Y even if there is no Y around. Even in the dark, my eyes have the function of indicating the presence of visible objects. So far so good – but can this theory deal with the disjunction problem?

A number of philosophers, including Fodor (who originally favoured this sort of approach) have argued that it can’t. The problem is that something very like the disjunction problem applies to teleological functions too. The problem is well illustrated by a beautiful example of Dretske’s:

Some marine bacteria have internal magnets (called magnetosomes) that function like compass needles, aligning themselves (and as a result, the bacteria) parallel to the earth’s magnetic field. Since these magnetic lines incline downwards (towards geomagnetic north) in
Explaining mental representation

the northern hemisphere (upwards in the southern hemisphere), bacteria in the northern hemisphere . . . propel themselves towards geomagnetic north. The survival value of magnetotaxis (as this sensory mechanism is called) is not obvious, but it is reasonable to suppose that it functions so as to enable the bacteria to avoid surface water. Since these organisms are capable of living only in the absence of oxygen, movement towards geomagnetic north will take the bacteria away from oxygen-rich surface water and towards the comparatively oxygen-free sediment at the bottom.16

Let’s agree that the organism’s mechanism has a teleological function. But what function does it have? Is its function to *propel the bacterium to geomagnetic north* or is it to *propel the bacterium to the absence of oxygen*? On the one hand, the mechanism is itself a magnet; on the other hand, the point of having the magnet inside the organism is to get it to oxygen-free areas.

Perhaps it has both these functions. However, as it needn’t have them both together, we should really say that it has the complex function that we could describe as ‘propelling the bacterium to geomagnetic north OR propelling the bacterium to the absence of oxygen’. And this is where we can see that teleological functions have the same sorts of ‘disjunctive problems’ as indication does. As some people put it, teleological functions are subject to a certain ‘indeterminacy’: it is literally indeterminate which function something has. If this is right, then we cannot use the idea of teleological function to solve the disjunction problem – so long as representation is itself determinate.

For this reason, some causal theorists have turned away from teleological functions. Notable among these is Fodor, who has defended a non-teleological causal theory of mental representation, which he calls the ‘asymmetric dependence’ theory.17 Let’s briefly look at it. (Beginners may wish to skip to the next section.)

Suppose that there are some circumstances in which (to return to our example) sheep cause us to have S-representations. Fodor observes that, if there are conditions in which goats-in-certain-circumstances also cause us to have S-representations, it makes sense
Explaining mental representation

to suppose that goats do this only because *sheep* already cause S-representations. Although it makes sense to suppose that only sheep might cause representations of sheep, Fodor thinks it doesn’t make that much sense to suppose that only goats might cause representations of sheep. Arguably, if they did this, then S-representations would be *goat*-representations, not sheep-representations at all. To say that the goat-to-S-representation causal link is an error, then, is to say that goats would not cause S-representations unless sheep did. But sheep would still cause S-representations even if goats didn’t.

It is perhaps easier to grasp the point in the context of perception. Suppose some of my sheep-perceptions are caused by sheep. But some goats look like sheep – that is, some of my perceptions of goats (i.e. those *caused* by goats) seem to me to be like sheep-perceptions. But perceptions caused by goats wouldn’t seem like sheep-perceptions *unless* perceptions caused by sheep also seem like sheep-perceptions. And the reverse is not the case, i.e. perceptions caused by sheep would still seem like sheep-perceptions even if there were no sheep-perceptions caused by goats.

Fodor expresses this by saying that the causal relation between goats and sheep-representations is *asymmetrically dependent* on the causal relation between sheep and sheep-representations. What does this technical term mean? Let’s abbreviate ‘cause’ to an arrow, →, and let’s abbreviate ‘sheep-representation’ to the upper-case SHEEP. It will also help if we underline the causal claims being made. Fodor says that the causal relation goat → SHEEP is dependent on the causal relation sheep → SHEEP in the following sense:

If there hadn’t been a sheep → SHEEP connection, then there wouldn’t have been a goat → SHEEP connection.

But the goat → SHEEP connection is asymmetrically dependent on the sheep → SHEEP connection because:

If there hadn’t been a goat → SHEEP connection, there still would have been a sheep → SHEEP connection.

Therefore, there is a dependence between the goat → SHEEP
Explaining mental representation

connection and the sheep $\rightarrow$ SHEEP connection, but it is not symmetrical.

There are two points worth noting about Fodor’s theory. First, the role that the idea of asymmetric dependence plays is simply to answer the disjunction problem. Fodor is essentially happy with indication theories of representation – he just thinks you need something like asymmetric dependence to deal with the disjunction problem. So, obviously, if you have some other way of dealing with that problem – or you have a theory in which that problem does not arise – then you do not have to face the question of whether asymmetric dependence gives an account of mental representation.

Second, Fodor proposes asymmetric dependence as only a sufficient condition of mental representation. That is, he is claiming only that if these conditions (indication and asymmetric dependence) hold between X and Y, then X represents Y. He is not saying that any possible kind of mental representation must exhibit the asymmetric dependence structure, but that if something actually exhibits this structure, then it is a mental representation.

For myself, I am unable to see how asymmetric dependence goes any way towards explaining mental representation. I think that the conditions that Fodor describes probably are true of mental representations. But I do not see how this gives us a deeper understanding of how mental representation actually works. In effect, Fodor is saying: error is parasitic on true belief. But it’s hard not to object that this is just what we knew already. The question rather is: what is error? Until we can give some account of error, it does not really help us to say that it is parasitic on true belief. Fodor has, of course, responded to complaints like this – but perhaps it is worth looking for a different approach.

Mental representation and success in action

In the most general terms, the causal theories of mental representation I have sketched so far attempt to identify the content of a belief – what it represents – with its cause. And, seen like this, it is obvious why this theory should encounter the problem of error: if every
Explaining mental representation

belief has a cause, and the content of every belief is whatever causes it, then every belief will correctly represent its cause, rather than (in some cases) incorrectly representing something else.

However, there is another way to approach the issue. Rather than concentrating on the causes of beliefs, as indication theories do, we could concentrate on the effects they have on behaviour. As we saw in Chapter 2, what you do is caused by what you believe (i.e. how you take the world to be) and by what you want. Perhaps the causal basis of representation is not to be found simply among the causes of mental states, but among their effects. The reduction of representation should look not just at the inputs to mental states, but at their outputs.

Here’s one idea along these lines, the elements of which we have already encountered in Chapter 2. When we act, we are trying to achieve some goal or satisfy some desire. And what we desire depends in part on how we think things are – if you think you have not yet had any wine, you may desire wine, but if you think you have had some wine, you may desire more wine. That is, desiring wine and desiring more wine are obviously different kinds of desire: you can’t desire more wine unless you think you’ve already have some wine. Now, whether you succeed in your attempts to get what you desire will depend on whether the way you take things to be – your belief – is the same as the way things are. If I want some wine, and I believe there is some wine in the fridge, then whether I succeed in getting wine by going to the fridge will depend on whether this belief is correct: that is, it will depend on whether there is wine in the fridge.

(The success of the action – going to the fridge – will depend on other things too, such as whether the fridge exists, and whether I can move my limbs. But we can ignore these factors at the moment, as we can assume that my belief that there is wine in the fridge involves the belief that the fridge exists, and that I would not normally try and move my limbs unless I believed that I could. So failure on these grounds would imply failure in these other beliefs.)

So far, the general idea should be fairly obvious: whether our actions succeed in satisfying our desires depends on whether our
Explaining mental representation

beliefs represent the world correctly. It is hard to object to this idea, except perhaps on account of its vagueness. But it is possible to convert the idea into part of the definition of the representational content of belief. The idea is this. A belief says that the world is a certain way: that there is wine in the fridge, for example. This belief may or may not be correct. Ignoring the complications mentioned in the previous paragraph for the moment, we can say that, if the belief is correct, then actions caused by it plus some desire (e.g. the desire for wine) will succeed in satisfying that desire. So the conditions under which the action succeeds are just those conditions specified by the content of the belief: the way the belief says the world is. For example, the conditions under which my attempt to get wine succeeds are just those conditions specified by the content of my belief: there is wine in the fridge. In a slogan: the content of a belief is identical with the ‘success conditions’ of the actions it causes. Let’s call this the ‘success theory’ of belief content.18

The success theory thus offers us a way of reducing the representational content of beliefs. Remember the form of a reductive explanation of representation:

(R) X represents Y if and only if _________

The idea was to fill out the ‘_________’ without mentioning the idea of representation. The success theory will do this in something like the following way:

A belief B represents condition C if and only if actions caused by B are successful when C obtains.

Here the ‘_________’ is filled out in a way that, on the face of it, does not mention representation: it only mentions actions caused by beliefs, the success of those actions and conditions obtaining in the world.19

One obvious first objection is that many beliefs cause no actions whatsoever. I believe that the current Prime Minister of the UK does not have a moustache. But this belief has never caused me to do anything before now – what actions could it possibly cause?

This question is easy to answer, if we allow ourselves enough imagination. Imagine, for example, being on a quiz show where
Explaining mental representation

you were asked to list current world leaders without moustaches. Your action (giving the name of the current Prime Minister) would succeed if the condition represented by your belief – that the present Prime Minister does not have a moustache – obtains. The situation may be fanciful, but that does not matter. What matters is that it is always possible to think of some situation where a belief would issue in action. However, this means that we have to revise our definition of the success theory, to include possible situations. A simple change from the indicative to the subjunctive can achieve this:

A belief B represents condition C if and only if actions which would be caused by B would succeed were C to obtain.

This formulation should give the general idea of what the success theory says.

There is a general difficulty concerning the definition of the key idea of success. What does success in action actually amount to? As I introduced the theory earlier, it is the fact that the action satisfies the desire which partly causes it. My desire is for wine; I believe there is wine in the fridge; this belief and desire conspire to cause me to go to the fridge. My action is successful if I get wine, i.e. if my desire is satisfied. So we should fill out the theory’s definition as follows:

A belief B represents condition C if and only if actions which would be caused by B and a desire D would satisfy D were C to obtain.

Though a bit more complicated, this is still a reductive definition: the idea of representation does not appear in the part of the definition which occurs after the ‘if and only if’.

But we might still wonder what the satisfaction of desires is. It cannot simply be the ceasing of a desire, because there are too many ways in which a desire may cease which are not ways of satisfying the desire. My desire for wine may cease if I suddenly come to desire something else more, or if the roof falls in, or if I die. But these are not ways of satisfying the desire. Nor can the satisfaction of my desire be a matter of my believing that the desire is satisfied. If you hypnotise me into thinking that I have drunk some wine, you have
Explaining mental representation

not really satisfied my desire. For I have not got what I wanted, namely wine.

No: the satisfaction of my desire for wine is a matter of bringing about a state of affairs in the world. Which state of affairs? The answer is obvious: the state of affairs represented by the desire. So, to fill out our definition of the success theory, we must say:

A belief B represents condition C if and only if actions which would be caused by B and a desire D would bring about the state of affairs represented by D were C to obtain.

Now the problem is obvious: the definition of representation for beliefs contains the idea of the state of affairs represented by a desire. The representational nature of beliefs is explained in terms of the representational nature of desires. We are back where we started.21

So, if the success theory is going to pursue its goal of a reductive theory of mental representation, it has to explain the representational nature of desires without employing the idea of representation. There are a number of ways that they might do this. Here I shall focus on the idea that mental states have teleological functions – specifically, biological functions. I’ll call this the biological theory of mental representation; versions of the theory have been defended by Ruth Millikan and David Papineau.22

Mental representation and biological function

The biological theory assumes that desires have some evolutionary purpose or function – that is, that they play some role in enhancing the survival of the organism, and hence the species. In some cases, there does seem an obvious connection between certain desires and the enhanced survival of the organisms of the species. Take the desire for water. If organisms like us do not get water, then they don’t survive very long. So, from the point of view of natural selection, it is clearly a good thing to have states which motivate or cause us to get water: and this is surely part of what a desire for water is.

However, it is one thing to say that desires must have had some evolutionary origin, or even an evolutionary purpose, and another
to say that their contents – what they represent – can be explained in terms of these purposes. The biological theory takes this more radical line. It claims that natural selection has ensured that we are in states whose function it is to cause a situation which enhances our survival. These states are desires, and the situations are their contents. So, for example, getting water enhances our survival, so natural selection has made sure that we are in states that cause us (other things being equal) to get water. The content of these states is (something like) \( I \text{ have water} \) because our survival has been enhanced when these states cause a state of affairs where I have water.

The success of an action, then, is a matter of its bringing about a survival-enhancing state of affairs. In reducing the representational contents of beliefs and desires, the theory works from the ‘outside in’: first establish which states of affairs enhance the organism’s survival, then find states whose function it is to cause these states of affairs. These are desires, and they represent those states of affairs. This is how the representational powers of desires are explained.

Once we have an explanation of the representational powers of desires, we can plug it into our explanation of the representational powers of beliefs. (This is not how all versions of the biological theory work; but it is a natural suggestion.) Remember that the success theory explained these in terms of the satisfaction of desires by actions. But we discovered that the satisfaction of desires involved a tacit appeal to what desires represent. This can now be explained in terms of the biological function of desires in enhancing the survival of the organism. If this ingenious theory works, then it clearly gives us a reductive explanation of mental representation.

But does it work? The theory explains the representational content of a given belief in terms of those conditions in which actions caused by the belief and a desire succeed in satisfying the desire. The satisfaction of desire is explained in terms of the desire bringing about conditions which enhance the survival of the organism. Let’s ignore for a moment the obvious point that people can have many desires – e.g. the desire to be famous for jumping off the Golden Gate bridge – which clearly have little to do with enhancing our survival.
Explaining mental representation

Remember that the theory is trying to deal with our most basic thoughts and motivations – beliefs and desires about food, sex, warmth, etc. – and not yet with more sophisticated mental states. Later in this chapter we will scrutinise this a little more (‘Against reduction and definition’, p. 200).

What I want to focus on here is an obvious consequence of the biological theory: if a creature has desires then it has evolved. That is, the theory makes it a condition of something’s having desires that it is the product of evolution by natural selection. For the theory says that a desire is just a state to which natural selection has awarded a certain biological function: to cause behaviour that enhances the survival of the organism. If an organism is in one of these states, then natural selection has ensured that it is in it. If the state hadn’t been selected for, then the organism wouldn’t be in that state.

The problem with this is that it doesn’t seem impossible that there should be a creature which had thoughts but which had not evolved. Suppose, for the sake of argument, that thinkers are made up of matter – that if you took all of a thinker’s matter away, there would be nothing left. Surely it is just the converse of this that it is possible in principle to rebuild the thinker – to put all its matter back together and it would still be a thinker. And if you can rebuild a thinker, then why can’t you build another thinker along the same lines? It appears at first sight that the biological theory of mental representation would rule out this possibility. But, though highly unlikely, it doesn’t seem to be absolutely impossible – indeed, the coherence of ‘teletransportation’ of the sort described in Star Trek seems to depend on it.

But the biological theory needn’t admit that this is impossible. What is central to the theory is that the creature’s states should have a function. But functions can be acquired in various ways. In the case of an artificially created thinker, the theory can say that its states obtain their function because they are assigned functions by their creator. So, just as an artificial heart can acquire a function by being designed and used as a heart, so an artificial person’s inner states might acquire functions by being designed and used as
Explaining mental representation

desires. These states only have *derived* intentionality, rather than *original* intentionality (see Chapter 1, ‘Intentionality’). But derived intentionality is still intentionality of a sort.

However, why couldn’t there be a thinker who is not designed at all? Couldn’t there be a thinker who came into existence by accident? Donald Davidson has described an imaginary situation in which lightning strikes a swamp and by an amazing coincidence synthesizes the chemicals in the swamp to create a replica of a human being. 23 This person – called ‘swampman’ – has all the physical and chemical states of a normal human being; let’s suppose he is a physical replica of me. But swampman (or swamp-me) has no evolutionary history, he is a mere freak accident. He looks like me, walks like me, makes sounds like me: but he has not evolved.

Would swampman have any mental states? Physicalists who believe that mental states are completely determined by the local physical states of the body must say ‘Yes’. In fact, they must say that, at the moment of his accidental creation, swampman will have almost *all* the same mental states as me – thoughts and conscious states – except for those, of course, which depend on our different contexts and spatio-temporal locations. But the biological theory of mental representation denies that swampman has any representational mental states at all, as, to have representational mental states, a creature must have been the product of evolution by natural selection. So if swampman is a thinker, then the biological theory of mental representation is false. So the biological theory must deny the possibility of swampman. But how can they deny this mere possibility? Here is how David Papineau responds:

The theory is intended as a *theoretical reduction* of the everyday notion of representational content, not as a piece of *conceptual analysis*. And as such it can be expected to overturn some of the intuitive judgments we are inclined to make on the basis of the everyday notion. Consider, for example, the theoretical reduction of the everyday notion of a liquid to the notion of the state of matter in which the molecules cohere but form no long-range order. This is clearly not a conceptual analysis of the everyday concept, since the everyday concept presup-
poses nothing about molecular structure. In consequence, this reduction corrects some of the judgements which flow from the everyday concept, such as the judgement that glass is not a liquid.\textsuperscript{24}

We distinguished between conceptual and naturalistic definitions earlier in this chapter – and, as this quotation makes clear, the biological theory is offering the latter. The defence against the swampman example is that our intuitive judgements about what is and is not possible are misleading us. If Papineau’s theory is right, then what we thought was allowed by the ordinary concept actually isn’t. Similarly, the ordinary concept of a liquid seems to rule out glass from being a liquid – but nonetheless, it is.

This response may make it look as if denying that swampman is a thinker is just one unfortunate counterintuitive side effect of the biological theory, which we must accept because of the other explanatory advantages of the theory. But, in fact, the situation is much more extreme than that. For the denial that swampman has any thoughts comes from the denial that his belief-forming mechanisms have any biological function – where a mechanism’s having a function is understood in terms of its actual causal history in bringing about certain effects which have actually enhanced the survival of its host’s creature. (This is the so-called ‘aetiological’ reading of the notion of biological function.\textsuperscript{25}) So: no actual evolutionary history, no function.

But, of course, this way of understanding of biological function is not restricted to the mental. This notion of function also applies to all other biological organs which are credited with having a function. So, if swampman has no thoughts, he also has no brain – because a brain is defined in terms of its many functions, and by the aetiological conception, swampman’s brain has no function. By the same reasoning, swampman has no heart. And because blood is doubtless defined by its function, he has no blood either. He just has something which looks like a heart, which pumps something that looks like blood around something that looks like a human body, sustaining the activity of something that looks like a brain, and giving rise to something that ‘looks like’ thought. In fact, why am I
Explaining mental representation

calling swampman ‘he’ at all? On this view, he is not a man, but just something that looks like a man.

So, if the biological theory of mental representation is committed to swampman’s not having thoughts, it looks as if it is committed to swampman’s not being an organism, for the same reason. What is doing the work here is the conception of biological function which the theory is using. If we find the consequence of the theory implausible, then we could reject that conception of function, or we could reject the theory outright.26 Given what has just been said, and the difficulties which I will outline in a while (‘Against reduction and definition’), I would prefer to reject the theory. But the idea that representation has a basis in the biological facts about organisms has a lot of plausibility for a believer in the mechanical mind. Of course, a believer in the mechanical mind holds that human beings are fundamentally biological entities. The question is, however, in what way can biological explanations help us understand the nature of mental capacities, and mental representation in particular? Is there a general answer to this question? Some philosophers, influenced by evolutionary psychology, think there is. It will be useful, therefore, to make a brief digression into evolutionary psychology, before returning to our main theme of mental representation.

Evolution and the mind

One way to understand the biological theory of mental representation is to see it as part of the wider project of understanding mental capacities in terms of evolutionary biological explanation, known as evolutionary psychology.27 Evolutionary psychology is not just the claim (accepted by all scientifically informed people) that human beings, creatures with mental capacities, evolved from earlier species of apes in a long and complex process starting some seven million years ago. This is a truth as solid as anything in science, and (give or take some details and dates) is not up for dispute. Evolutionary psychology is the more specific and controversial claim that many mental capacities and faculties can be explained by considering them to be adaptations in the evolutionary biologist’s sense. An
adaptation is a trait or capacity whose nature can be explained as the product of natural selection. The drab plumage of certain birds, for example, can be explained by the fact that those of their remote ancestors with drab plumage were better able to camouflage themselves among plants, and therefore survive predators, and therefore breed, and therefore pass on their plumage to their offspring . . . and so on. The birds’ plumage, it is concluded, is an adaptation.28

There is a debate among evolutionary biologists about what the units or the ‘currency’ of natural selection are. What does natural selection select among? Some say it selects among organisms to find the fittest for survival. Others, such as Richard Dawkins, think that this does not get to the heart of the matter, and argue that the basic unit of selection is the gene: organisms are ‘vehicles’ for carrying their genes, and conveying that genetic material by replicating into future generations (this is what Dawkins called the ‘selfish gene’ hypothesis).29 Note that believing that some, or many, human traits are adaptations is not the same as believing that the basic unit of selection is the gene. Nor is believing in adaptations the same as being an adaptationist. Adaptationism is defined in various ways: some say it is the view that all traits are adaptations (a crazy view, as we shall see); others define it as the view that adaptation is optimal: as one commentator puts it, the view is that ‘a model censored of all evolutionary mechanisms except natural selection could predict evolution accurately’.30

Two features of the concept of adaptation are worth noting. First, the inference that something is an adaptation is an inference to the best explanation (see Chapter 5, ‘Modularity of mind’). The adaptive explanation of the bird’s plumage is better than the alternatives, whatever they may be, which gives us a reason to endorse the claim that the plumage is an adaptation. Second, and relatedly, the explanation is a form of ‘reverse engineering’: from the observable trait of the bird, the biologist infers the kind of environmental origins in which such a trait would be adaptive, i.e. it would aid the survival of creatures with that trait. Therefore, the evidence for the proposed adaptive explanation would involve at least two things: first, that the adaptive explanation is better than the alternatives, whatever
they may be; and, second, that we have some kind of independent knowledge of the kind of environments in which the presence of such a trait does aid survival.

How might psychological capacities and traits be explained as products of natural selection? We have to be clear, first of all, what it is we are trying to explain. If we focus on behaviour patterns of individuals, then we will not find remotely plausible examples of adaptations. We will only find the sort of pseudo-science that fills Sunday newspapers. It is absurd to explain the behaviour of a rich older man buying an expensive meal in a restaurant for a younger woman by saying that the man wanted to propagate his genes and was attracted to the woman because youth is a good indicator of fertility; and equally absurd to explain the woman’s behaviour in accepting the meal by saying that she wanted to propagate her genes and was attracted to the man because his evident wealth was a good indication that he could provide for her offspring. This kind of thing is absurd partly because the disposition to buy meals in restaurants just could not be an adaptation, and not just because restaurants were invented in eighteenth-century Paris and not in the Pleistocene era. Buying meals in restaurants is a complex social activity that has implications for many other social institutions and practices (money, social and class structures, gastronomy, viticulture, etc.). To compare cases like these to things such as the colourful tail of the male peacock is simply to refuse to recognise the real and vast differences between these phenomena. And, without recognizing these differences, we will never move beyond the most superficial understanding of what is going on in restaurants (and, hence, human psychology).

Moreover, as I noted above, arguments for adaptations must rely fundamentally on inference to the best explanation (of which ‘reverse engineering’ arguments are a special case). Maybe the explanation of the man’s behaviour in adaptationist terms would have something to be said for it if there were no other explanations around. But, where the explanation of human behaviour is concerned, we are not in this situation. We do not find situations like the one I have just described mysterious or baffling from the
Explaining mental representation

perspective of common-sense psychology. We can imagine any number of common-sense psychological explanations which make so much more sense of this situation than any hypothesis about the couple's desires to propagate their genes. Unless we add some further assumptions – for example, eliminative materialism – the explanation of this behaviour in terms of genes is probably one of the worst explanations around. In any case, it has little chance of being the best.

Someone might conceivably respond that it is true that people in this kind of situation do not have conscious beliefs and desires about propagating their genes. But, nonetheless, it could be said that there are deep unconscious mechanisms that lead them to do things like this, and these mechanisms are adaptations. But what reason is there to believe this explanation even in this modified form? The reason cannot be because all traits are adaptations; there is little reason to believe this. In some cases, traits which plausibly evolved for one purpose have become used for others (these are called 'exaptations'). A classic example is birds' feathers, which are originally thought to have evolved for insulation, and only later became used for flight. Moreover, there are cases for which we lack any reason to suppose that a trait actually did come about as a result of natural selection at all. To take a controversial example: some thinkers, including Chomsky, argue that this is the case with language. They say that there is no reason to believe that human language is a product of natural selection. As we do not know the circumstances in which having a language actually aided the survival of our ancestors, we are not entitled to assume that it was an adaptation. Of course, we can think of cases in which language might have aided survival. But there is no valid argument to take us from 'X might have aided survival in circumstances Y' to 'X is an adaptation'. Just because something could have come about because it gave an organism a certain survival advantage, this goes no way towards showing that it actually did.32

Nor should we assume (and few do) that everything we do is determined by our genes. Organisms with identical genetic material can develop in very different ways in different environments. The
Explaining mental representation

development and behaviour of organisms is determined by many factors, including their internal genetic dispositions and their general environmental conditions, as well as by freak occurrences and environmental disasters such as floods and ice ages. Evolution, the development of forms of life over time, does not rely on natural selection alone.

In a famous discussion, Stephen J. Gould and Richard Lewontin drew an analogy between adaptationist explanations of traits and spurious explanations of why certain artefacts have the form they have. Looking at the fabulous mosaics in the arches of the doorway of St Mark’s basilica in Venice, one might be led to think that the spaces between the arches (called ‘spandrels’) were designed in order that the mosaics might be put there. But this is not so: the spandrels are a mere side effect of the building of the arches, and the inspired artist or artists took advantage of the space to create something beautiful. The spandrels were not built in order to make the mosaics. To argue that they were is to make an analogous mistake of seeing adaptations everywhere. An organism’s traits may arise through many historical processes, and we need sound empirical evidence before claiming natural selection as one of these. In the absence of such evidence, we should not make up adaptationist stories of the circumstances in which certain traits would aid survival.

So it seems that we have no reason to think that every trait of an organism is an adaptation. Perhaps this should not really be very controversial, and the extreme adaptationism mentioned above is really a straw man. Paul Bloom sums up the present attitude of evolutionary biologists as follows:

Modern biologists have elaborated Darwin’s insight that although natural selection is the most important of all evolutionary mechanisms, it is not the only one. Many traits that animals possess are not adaptations, but emerge either as by-products of adaptations or through entirely nonselectionist processes, such as random genetic drift. Natural selection is necessary only in order to explain the evolution of what Darwin called ‘organs of extreme perfection and complexity’ such as the heart, the hand and the eye . . . Although there is controversy
Explaining mental representation

about the proper scope of selectionist theories, this much at least is agreed upon, even by those who are most cautious about applying adaptive explanations.34

Assuming that this is a broadly correct account of the present state of knowledge, the upshot is that we need positive reasons to believe that any psychological traits are adaptations. Our example of the rich man and the younger woman may well have been a caricature of a certain kind of adaptationist explanation. But what kinds of example would be more plausible?

Taking our lead from Darwin’s remark quoted above, perhaps we should look for ‘organs of extreme perfection and complexity’ in the mind. Or at least we should look for mental organs of some sort, independently identified as such. Then we would be in a position to ask the ‘reverse engineering’ question: in what environment would the possession of such an organ have aided the survival of the creatures whose organ it is? The psychologists would then need to look for evidence that the organism in question lived in such a kind of environment, and evidence that organisms developed along the lines suggested.

The best candidates for such mental organs would be relatively isolated, resilient, probably innate mechanisms within the mind, dedicated to specific information-processing tasks. In other words, they would be mental modules in something like the sense described in Chapter 4 (‘The modularity of mind’). The visual system is a prime example of such a module. To establish that the visual system is an adaptation – a claim that would perhaps be found plausible by even the most sceptical of anti-adaptationists – one would have to give a specification of its task, and of the environment in which the performance of this task would aid survival. When in possession of a fairly well-understood mental module, we can raise questions about its function and its evolutionary history in the hope of finding out whether it is an adaptation, just as we can about other organs. (One difficulty, of course, is finding the actual evidence for the past existence of cognitive capacities: as Fodor says, ‘cognition is too soft to leave a paleontological record’.35) It is not surprising, then,
that evolutionary psychologists have tended to adopt the massive modularity thesis described in Chapter 4 – the thesis that all aspects of cognition can be broken down into modules. And it is equally unsurprising that critics of evolutionary psychology, such as Fodor, are also those who reject massive modularity. There will be no adaptationist explanation of the cognition underlying, for example, human ‘mating’ behaviour, simply because it is impossible to isolate these cognitive activities away from all the other interlinked activities within which they make sense.

The only conclusion we can draw from this short discussion is that the issues surrounding evolutionary psychology are entangled with controversial issues in evolutionary theory itself – such as the scope of adaptationist explanation, and what that kind of explanation amounts to – but that evolutionary psychology is at its strongest when its explananda are mental modules. Whether we should believe that any modules are adaptations depends, unsurprisingly, on the evidence, not on philosophical theorising – nor on the availability of possible explanations. In any case, it seems plain that the mechanical picture of the mind does not need an evolutionary account of mind. The mind can be integrated into the world of causes and effects even if most mental capacities lack an evolutionary explanation.36

Against reduction and definition

Let’s now return to the project of explaining mental representation by giving a reductive definition of it. Even if this reductive approach manages to solve the disjunction problem, one of the problems that we postponed earlier still remains: how do we explain the representational powers of concepts other than very simple concepts such as water, food, predator and so on. Reductive theories of representation tend to treat this as largely a matter of detail – their approach is: let’s get the simple concepts right before moving on to the complex concepts. But, even if they do get the simple concepts right, how exactly are we supposed to move on to the complex concepts? How
are we supposed to explain a concept like (for example) *baroque architecture* in causal or biological terms?

This question arises for Fodor too. Perhaps Fodor would say that mental representations of baroque architecture are asymmetrically dependent on pieces of baroque architecture – for example, a piece of baroque architecture causes the mental representation *baroque architecture*, and, even though a piece of Renaissance architecture may cause this mental representation, it wouldn’t do so if the baroque architecture didn’t. But this is very implausible. For one thing, many people have come in contact with baroque architecture without forming any representations of it as baroque; and some people will have come across the concept in books without ever having had causal contact with baroque architecture. So what should Fodor say?

Reductive theories of representation aim to provide some way of filling in the schema,

\[
(R) X \text{ represents } Y \text{ if and only if } \text{__________}
\]

in terms that do not mention representation. As Fodor has said, ‘if aboutness is real, it must really be something else’.37 The problem I am raising now is that, if a reductive theory is going to be a theory of all kinds of mental content, then *either* it has to tell us how we can plausibly fill in the ‘________’ directly for all concepts and contents *or* it has to give us a systematic method of building up from the concepts it can directly deal with (the ‘simple’ concepts) to those it cannot directly deal with (the ‘complex’ concepts). I have suggested that neither Fodor’s theory nor the biological theory can take the direct route. So these theories must provide us with some idea of how to get from ‘simple’ concepts to ‘complex’ ones. And until we have such an idea we are entitled to suspend belief about whether there can be any such thing as a reductive theory of representation at all.

(The success theory, on the other hand, doesn’t have any difficulties dealing with all contents directly. For it can simply say that a belief has the content P just in case actions caused by that belief and a desire D would succeed in satisfying D just when P is true – and P can be a situation concerning anything whatsoever. But,
Explaining mental representation

as we saw, the success theory cannot provide a genuine reduction of representation unless it can give a reduction of the contents of desires. So as it stands, the success theory is incomplete.)

This line of thought can lead to real worries about the whole idea of explaining mental representation by reducing it by means of a definition such as (R). For, after all, defining something (whether naturalistically or not) is not the only way of explaining it. If I wanted to explain baroque architecture to you, for example, I might take you to see some baroque buildings, pointing out the distinctive features – the broken pediments, the cartouches, the extravagant use of line and colour – and contrast the style with earlier and later styles of architecture until you gradually come to have a grasp of the concept. What I would not do is say ‘A building is baroque if and only if ______’, with the blank filled in by terms which do not mention the concept baroque. For this case, grasping the concept is not grasping a definition – to use Wittgenstein’s phrase, ‘light dawns gradually over the whole’.38

This is not to say that a reductive definition cannot be an explanation – just that it is not the only kind of explanation. So far in this chapter I have focused on philosophical attempts to explain representation by reducing it by definition. In what remains I want to return to the non-reductive possibility which I mentioned at the opening of this chapter.

As I introduced the idea in Chapter 3, the notion of computation depends on the notion of representation. So, according to reductionists like Fodor, for example, the direction of investigation is as follows. What distinguishes systems that are merely describable as computing functions (such as the solar system) from systems that genuinely do compute functions (such as an adding machine) is that the latter contain and process representations – no computation without representation. The aim, then, is to explain representation: we need a reductive theory of representation to vindicate our computational theory of cognition in accordance with the naturalistic assumptions mentioned above (‘Reduction and definition’).

But this final move could be rejected. It could be rejected on the grounds that the naturalistic assumptions themselves should be
Explaining mental representation

rejected. Or it could be rejected on the grounds that the computational theory of cognition does not require a reductive account of representation in order to employ the notion of representation. I shall concentrate on this second line of thought.

I want to consider, in a very abstract way, a theory of mental representation which adopts the following strategy. What the theory is concerned to explain is the behaviour of organisms in their environments. This behaviour is plausibly seen as representational – as directed at goals, as attempting to satisfy the organism’s desires and aims (e.g. searching for food). The theory claims that the best explanation of how this behaviour is produced is to view it as the product of computational processes – to view it, that is, as computing a ‘cognitive function’: a function whose arguments and values are representations which have some cognitive relation to one another (in the way described in Chapter 4: ‘The argument for the language of thought’). As computations are (of their very nature) defined in terms of representations, certain inner states of the organism, as well as the inputs and outputs, must be treated as representations. These states are the states involved in the computation, so they must have a specification which is not given in terms of what they represent – a specification in purely formal or ‘syntactic’ terms. And to treat a state as a representation is to specify a mapping from the state itself – described in purely formal terms – to its abstract representational content. This mapping is known as an ‘interpretation function’. The picture which results is what Cummins calls the ‘Tower Bridge’ picture (see Figure 5.1).

Based on this view, it’s not as if we have to find the states of the organism which we can tell are representations on independent grounds – that is, on grounds independent of the computations that we attribute to the organism. What we do is treat a certain system as performing computations, in which computation is the disciplined transition between inner states, formally specified. We then define an interpretation function which ‘maps’ the inner states onto contents. This approach agrees with Fodor’s claim that there is no computation without representation. But this does not mean that we need to give a reductive account of what a representation
Explaining mental representation

An analogy may help to show how representation figures in the computational theory on this account. When we measure weight, for example, we use numbers to pick out the weights of objects, in accord with a certain unit of measurement. We use the number 2.2 to pick out the weight (in pounds) of a standard bag of sugar. Having picked out a weight by ‘mapping’ it on to a number, we can see that arithmetical operations on numbers ‘mirror’ physical relations between specific weights. So, for example, if we know that a bag of sugar weighs 2.2 pounds, we only need to know elementary arithmetic to know that two such bags of sugar will weigh 4.4 pounds, and so on.

Analogously, when we ‘measure’ a person’s thoughts, we use sentences to pick out these thoughts – their beliefs, desires and so on. We use the sentence ‘The man who broke the bank at Monte Carlo died in misery’ to pick out someone’s belief that the man who broke the bank at Monte Carlo died in misery. Having picked out the belief
Explaining mental representation

by ‘mapping’ it on to a sentence, we can see that logical relations between sentences ‘mirror’ psychological relations between specific beliefs. So, for example, if we know that Vladimir believes that the man who broke the bank at Monte Carlo died in misery, we need only elementary logic to know that Vladimir believes that someone died in misery, and so on.

Or so the story goes – the analogy raises many complicated issues. (Remember, for instance, the question discussed in Chapter 4 of whether logic can really provide a description of human thought processes.) But the point of employing the analogy here is just to illustrate how concrete states might be mapped onto apparently ‘abstract’ entities such as numbers or sentences, and how the behaviour of these abstract entities mirrors certain interesting relations between the states. The analogy also illustrates how the theory can permit itself to be non-reductive: just as the question does not arise of how we ‘reduce’ an object’s relation to a number which picks out its weight, neither should the question arise about how we reduce a person’s relation to the sentences which express the contents of their thoughts.

Two features of the weight case shown above are worth noting. First, there must be an independent way of characterising the weights of objects, apart from that in terms of numbers. Think of old-fashioned kitchen scales, on which something’s weight is measured by simply comparing it to other weights. Numbers need not be used.

Secondly, we have to accept that there is no unique number which measures the weight of an object. For which number is used to measure weight is relative to the unit of measurement chosen. The weight of our bag of sugar is 2.2 pounds, but it is also 1 kilogram. There is no limit in principle to the numbers which can be used to measure our bag of sugar – so we cannot talk about ‘the’ number which expresses its weight.

Do these features carry over to the analogous case of mental representation? The first feature should carry over uncontroversially for those who accept a computational theory of cognition. For they will accept that the mental states that participate in computations
do have a formal description which is not given in terms of the sentences which express their contents.

The second feature is a little more problematic. For, in the case of a belief, for example, we have a strong conviction that there is a unique sentence which expresses its content. The content of a belief is what makes it the belief it is – so surely a belief’s content is essential to it. If the belief that snow is white had a different content (say, grass is green) then surely it would be a different belief. But, if the analogy with numbers is to work, then there must be many different sentences which pick out the same belief state. Which sentence, then, expresses the content of the belief?

The obvious way around this is to say that the content of the belief is expressed by all those sentences with the same meaning. The belief that snow is white, for example, can be picked out by using the English sentence, ‘Snow is white’, the Italian sentence ‘La neve è bianca’, the German sentence ‘Schnee ist weiss’, or the Hungarian ‘A hó fehér’ – and so on. These sentences are intertranslatable; they all mean the same thing. It is this meaning, rather than the sentences which have the meaning, which is the content of the belief. So the idea that each belief has a unique content which is essential to it is preserved.

However, it could be said that, while this approach may work straightforwardly for states like belief, there is no need to apply it to the sorts of states postulated by a computational theory of mind (e.g. a computational theory of vision). For, from the view of computation defended by the non-reductive approach, we should abandon the idea that all mental states have unique contents which are essential to them. The reason, essentially, is that an interpretation function is just a mapping of the inner states onto an abstract structure that ‘preserves’ the structure of the inner states. And there are many mappings that will do this. That is, there are many interpretation functions that will assign distinct interpretations to the symbols – which one we choose is determined not by the elusive ‘unique content’ of the state, but by which interpretation gives the theory more explanatory power.

It could be objected that this kind of approach makes the nature
of representation and computation too dependent on the decisions of human theorists. For I’ve just been talking about ‘treating’ the states of the system as representations, and of ‘specifying’ mappings from states to contents, ‘assigning’ interpretations to states, and so forth. It could be objected that whether an organism performs computations or not is a matter of objective fact, not of our specifications or assignments.

But this criticism is misplaced. For, while the application of a theory to an organism is clearly a matter of human decision, whether this application correctly characterises the organism is not. The question is: are any of the organism’s cognitive processes correctly characterisable as computations? To test a hypothesis about the computational character of an organism’s processes, we have to interpret the elements in that process. But this no more makes the existence of the process a matter of human decision than the fact that we can pick out and label the physical forces acting individually on a body, and so calculate the net force, makes this physical interaction a matter of human decision.

To sum up: the non-reductive answer to the question, ‘What is a mental representation?’ would be given by listing the ways in which the concept of representation figures in the theory. Those states of an organism which are interpretable as instantiating the stages in the computation of a cognitive function are representations. This account, plus the general theory of computation, tells us all we need to know about the nature of mental representations. The hard tasks are now ahead of us: finding out which systems to treat as computational, and finding out which computations they perform.

The appeal of this non-reductive theory of representation is that it can say many of the things that the reductive theory wants to say about the computational structure of states of mind, without having to provide a definitional reduction of the notion of representation, and so without having to deal with the intractable problems of error. The price that is paid for this is allowing the idea that computational mental states do not have unique contents which are essential to them.

But why should this be a problem? Partly because it seems so
Explaining mental representation

obvious to us that our thoughts do have unique contents. It is obvi-
ous to me that my current belief that it is now raining, for example,
just could not have another content without being a different belief.
However, it can be responded that this appeal to how our minds
seem to us is, strictly speaking, irrelevant to the computational
theory of mind. For that theory deals with the unconscious mecha-
nisms of thought and thought-processes; it is not directly answer-
able to introspection, to how our thoughts strike us. After all, our
thoughts do not strike us as computational – except perhaps when
we are consciously working our way through an explicit algorithm
– but no-one would think that this is an adequate objection to the
computational theory of cognition.

There is a tension, then, between how our thoughts seem to us,
and certain things that the computational theory of cognition says
about them. The significance of this tension will be discussed further
in Chapter 6.

Conclusion: can representation be reductively explained?

Philosophical attempts to explain the notion of representation
by reducing it have not been conspicuously successful. They all
have trouble with the problems of error. This is unsurprising: the
idea of error and the idea of representation go hand in hand. To
represent the world as being a certain way is implicitly to allow a
gap between how the representation says the world is, and how the
world actually is. But this is just to allow the possibility of error. So
any reduction which captures the essence of representation must
capture whatever it is that allows for this possibility. This is why the
possibility of error can never be a side issue for a reductive theory
of representation.

But there is a further problem. Reductive theories of representa-
tion have to be able to account for all kinds of mental content, not
just the simple kinds connected with (say) food and reproduction.
But they have as yet provided no account of how to do this. So a
certain degree of scepticism seems advisable.

While both these problems are avoided by the non-reductive
Explaining mental representation

theory I described at the end of the chapter, this theory embraces the consequence that many of our mental states will not be assigned unique contents. But the idea that our mental states have unique contents seems to be essential to representational mental states as we ordinarily understand them. So, even understanding the computational theory of cognition in this non-reductive way, we start to depart from the ordinary notion of cognition and thought. The question of the extent to which is this acceptable will be addressed in the next chapter.

Further reading

Explaining mental representation

Consciousness and the mechanical mind

The story so far

What should we make of the mechanical view of the mind? In this book we have considered various ways in which the view has dealt with the phenomenon of mental representation, with our knowledge of the thoughts of others, and how (supplemented by further assumptions) it forms the philosophical basis of a computational view of thought. And, in the previous chapter, we looked at the attempts to explain mental representation in other terms, or ‘reduce’ it.

There are many questions unresolved: how adequate is the Theory Theory account of our understanding of others’ thoughts? Do our minds have a connectionist or a classical ‘architecture’, or some combination of the two? Should a theory of mental representation attempt to reduce the contents of mental states to causal patterns of indication and the like, or is a non-reductive approach preferable? On some of these questions – e.g. connectionism vs. classicism – not enough is yet known for the sensible response to be other than a cautious open mind. On others – e.g. Theory Theory versus simulation – it seems to me that the debate has not yet been sharply enough formulated to know exactly what is at stake. It should be clear, though, that the absence of definite answers here should not give us reason to reject the mechanical view of the mind. For the essence of the mechanical view as I have characterised it is very hard to reject. It essentially involves commitment to the overwhelmingly plausible view that the mind is a causal mechanism which has its effects in behaviour. Everything else – computation, Theory Theory, reductive theories of content – is detail.

However, there are philosophers who do reject the view wholesale, and not because of the inadequacies of the details. They believe that the real problem with the mechanical view of the mind is that
Consciousness and the mechanical mind

it distorts – or even offers no account of – how our minds appear to us. It leaves out what is sometimes called the phenomenology of mind – where ‘phenomenology’ is the theory (‘ology’) of how things seem to us (the ‘phenomena’). These critics object that the mechanical mind leaves out all the facts about how our minds strike us, what it feels like to have a point of view on the world. As far as the mechanical approach to the mind is concerned, they say, this side of having a mind might as well not exist. The mechanical approach treats the mind as ‘a dead phenomenon, a blank agency imprinted with causally efficacious traces of recoverable encounters with bits of the environment’. Or, to borrow a striking phrase of Francis Bacon’s, the criticism is that the mechanical approach will ‘buckle and bow the mind unto the nature of things’.

In fact, something like this is a common element in some of the criticisms of the mechanical mind which we have encountered throughout this book. In Chapter 2, for instance, we saw that the Theory Theory was attacked by simulation theorists for its inadequate representation of what we do when we interpret others. By ‘what we do when we interpret others’, simulation theorists are talking about how interpretation strikes us. Interpretation does not seem to us like applying a theory – it’s much more like an act of imaginative identification. (I do not mean to imply that simulation theorists are necessarily opposed to the whole mechanical picture; but they can be.) Yet why should anyone deny that interpretation sometimes seems to us like this? In particular, why should Theory Theorists deny it? And, if they shouldn’t deny it, then what is the debate supposed to be about? The Theory Theory can reply that the issue is not how interpretation seems to us, but what makes interpretation succeed. The best explanation for the success of interpretation is to postulate tacit or implicit knowledge of a theory of interpretation. Calling this theory ‘tacit’ is partly to indicate that it is not phenomenologically available – that is, we can’t necessarily tell by introspecting whether the theory is correct. But, according to the Theory Theory, this is irrelevant.

The same pattern of argument emerged when we looked at Dreyfus’s critique of AI in Chapter 3. Dreyfus argued that thinking
Consciousness and the mechanical mind

cannot be a matter of manipulating representations according to rules. This is because thinking requires ‘know-how’, which cannot be reduced to representations or rules. But part of Dreyfus’s argument for this is phenomenological: thinking does not seem to us like rule-governed symbol manipulation. It wouldn’t be too much of a caricature to represent Dreyfus as saying: ‘Just try it: think about some everyday task, like going to a restaurant, say – some task which requires basic cognitive abilities. Then try and figure out which rules you are following, and which “symbols” you are manipulating. You can’t say what they are, except in the most open-ended and imprecise way’.

And, once again, the reply to this kind of objection on behalf of AI and the computational theory of cognition is that Dreyfus misses the point. For the point of the computational hypothesis is to explain the systematic nature of the causal transitions that constitute cognition. The computational processes that the theory postulates are not supposed to be accessible to introspection. So it cannot be an objection to the computational theory to say that we cannot introspect them.

In a number of debates, then, there seems to be a general kind of objection to mechanical hypotheses about the mind – that they leave out, ignore or cannot account for facts about how our minds seem to us, about the phenomenology of mind. In response, the mechanical view argues that how our minds seem to us is irrelevant to the mechanical hypothesis in question.4

It must be admitted that there is something unsatisfactory about this response. For the mechanical view cannot deny that there is such a phenomenon as how (our own and others’) minds seem to us. And, what is more, many aspects of the idea of the mechanical mind are motivated by considering how the mind seems to us, in a very general sense of ‘seems’. Consider, for example, the route I took in Chapter 2 from the interpretation of other minds to the hypothesis that thoughts are inner causal mechanisms, the springs of action. This is a fairly standard way of motivating the causal picture of thoughts, and its starting-points are common-sense observations about how we use conjectures about people’s minds to explain their
Consciousness and the mechanical mind

behaviour. Another example is Fodor's appeal to the systematic nature of thought in order to motivate the Mentalese hypothesis. The examples that Fodor typically uses concern ordinary beliefs, as conceived by common sense: if someone believes that Anthony loves Cleopatra, then they must \textit{ipso facto} have the conceptual resources to (at least) entertain the thought that Cleopatra loves Anthony. The starting points in many arguments for aspects of the mechanical mind are common-sense observations about how minds strike us. So it would be disingenuous for defenders of the mechanical mind to say that they have no interest at all in how minds seem to us.

The worry here is that, although it may start off in common-sense facts about how minds strike us, the mechanical view of the mind ends up saying things which seem to ignore how minds strike us, and thus depart from its starting point in common sense. What is the basis of this scepticism about the mechanical mind? Is it just that no defender of the view has yet come up with an account of the phenomenology of the mind? Or is there some deeper, more principled, objection to the mechanical mind which derives from phenomenology, which shows why the mechanical picture must be incorrect? In Chapter 5, we saw that many suppose that the normativity of the mental is one reason why a general reduction of mental representation must fail. The idea is that the facts that thought is true or false, correct or incorrect, that reasoning is sound or unsound, are all supposed to prevent an explanation of mental content in purely causal terms. But I argued that a conceptual reduction of mental content may not be essential to the mechanical picture of the mind. Representation may have to be considered a basic or fundamental concept in the theory of mind, without any further analysis. If this is true, then normativity is a basic or fundamental concept in the theory of mind too, because the idea of representation essentially carries with it the idea of correctness and incorrectness. But we saw no reason in this to deny that the underlying mechanisms of mental representation are causal in nature, and therefore no reason to deny the mechanical picture wholesale.

But there is another area in the investigation of the mind in which general arguments have been put forward that no causal
Consciousness and the mechanical mind

Consciousness and the mechanical mind can possibly give an adequate account of the phenomena of mind. This is the investigation into consciousness, postponed since Chapter 1. It is often said that consciousness is what presents the biggest obstacle to a scientific account of the mind. Our task in this chapter is to understand what this obstacle is supposed to be.

**Consciousness, 'what it's like' and qualia**

Consciousness is at once the most obvious feature of mental life and one of the hardest to define or characterise. In a way, of course, we don't need to define it. In everyday life, we have no difficulty employing the notion of consciousness – as when the doctor asks whether the patient has lost consciousness, or when we wonder whether a lobster is conscious in any way when it is thrown alive into a pan of boiling water. We may not have any infallible tests which will establish whether a creature is conscious or not; but it seems that we have no difficulty deciding what is at issue when trying to establish this.

Or at least, we have no difficulty deciding what is at issue as long as we don’t try and reflect on what is going on. In considering the question, ‘What is time?’, Saint Augustine famously remarked that when no-one asks him, he knows well enough, but if someone were to ask him, then he does not know how to answer. The situation seems the same with ‘What is consciousness?’ We are perfectly at home with the distinction between the conscious and the non-conscious when we apply it in ordinary life; but when we ask ourselves the question, ‘What is consciousness?’, we are stuck for an answer. How should we proceed?

Well, what is the everyday distinction between the conscious and the non-conscious? We attribute consciousness to creatures, living organisms, and also to states of mind. People and animals are conscious; but so also are their sensations and (some of) their thoughts. The first use of the concept of consciousness has been called ‘creature consciousness’ and the second use ‘state consciousness’. Creature consciousness and state consciousness are obviously
Consciousness and the mechanical mind

interdependent: if a creature is conscious, that is when it is in conscious states of mind; and conscious states of mind are *ipso facto* the states of a conscious creature. There is no reason to suppose that we should define the one idea in terms of the other. But, nonetheless, it is perhaps easier to start our exploration of consciousness by considering what it is for a creature to be conscious. Thomas Nagel gave philosophers a vivid way of talking about the distinction between conscious and non-conscious creatures: a creature is conscious, he said, when there is something *it is like* to be that creature. There is nothing it is like to be a bacterium, nothing it is like to be a piece of cheese – but something it is like to be a dog or a human being or (to use Nagel’s famous example) a bat. This ‘what it is like’ idiom can be easily transferred to state consciousness too: there is something it is like to be tasting (to be in the state of tasting) vanilla ice-cream or to be smelling (to be in the state of smelling) burning rubber. That is, there is something it is like to be in these states of mind. But there is nothing it is like to be largely composed of water, or to have high blood pressure. These are not states of mind.

The phrase ‘what it is like’ is not supposed to be a definition of consciousness. But, as I have said already, we are not looking for a definition here. No-one lacking the concept of consciousness (if such a person were possible) would be able to grasp it by being told that there is something it is like to be conscious, or to be in conscious states. But we can say a couple of things about the meaning of this phrase which help to clarify its role in discussions of consciousness. First, the phrase is not intended in a *comparative* way. One might ask: what is Vegemite like? And the answer could be given: it’s like Marmite. (For the uninitiated, Vegemite and Marmite are wonderful yeast-based condiments, the first from Australia, the second from the UK.) Here, asking what something is like is asking what things are *like* it; that is, what things resemble it. This is not the sense of ‘what it’s like’ that Nagel intended when he said that there is something it is like to be a bat. Second, the phrase is not intended simply to mean *what it feels like*, if ‘feels’ has its normal meaning. For there are some states of mind where it makes sense to say that there is something it is like to be in these states, even
though this does not involve feeling in any ordinary sense. Consider the process of thinking through some problem, trying to understand some difficult task, in your head. There is, intuitively, something it is like to be thinking through this problem; but it need not ‘feel’ like anything. There need be no special feelings or sensations involved. So, although there is something it is like to feel a sensation, not all cases where there is something it is like are cases of feelings.

‘What it is like’, then, does not mean what it resembles and it does not (just) mean what it feels like. What it is trying to express is how things seem to us when we are conscious, or in conscious states, what I called in the previous section the appearance or the phenomena of mind. This is supposed to be different from merely being the kind of creature which has a mind: What it is to be a bat is one thing; what it is like to be a bat is another. Now, the term ‘phenomenal consciousness’ is sometimes used for this idea of how things seem to a conscious creature; and the term is etymologically apt, given that the English word ‘phenomenon’ is derived from the Greek word for appearance. A creature is phenomenally conscious when there is something it is like to be that creature; a state of mind is phenomenally conscious when there is something it is like to be in that state. The special way a state of mind is, what constitutes what it is like to be in that state, is likewise called the phenomenal character of the state.

Sometimes phenomenal consciousness is described in terms of qualia (we first encountered qualia in Chapter 1, ‘Brentano’s thesis’). Qualia (plural: the singular is quale) are supposed to be the non-representational, non-intentional, yet phenomenally conscious properties of states of mind. Believers in qualia say that the particular character of the aroma of smelling coffee cannot just be captured in terms of the way the smell represents coffee; this would fail to capture the way it feels to smell coffee. Even when you have described all the ways your experience of the smell of coffee represents coffee, you will have left something out: that is the qualia of the experience of smelling coffee, the intrinsic properties of the experience, which are independent of the representation of coffee. Someone who believes in qualia denies Brentano’s thesis that all
Consciousness and the mechanical mind

mental phenomena are intentional: certain conscious properties of states of mind are not intentional at all. And these are supposed to be the properties which are so hard to make sense of from a naturalistic point of view. Hence the problem of consciousness is often called the ‘problem of qualia’.8

But, though it is not controversial that there is such a thing as phenomenal consciousness, it is controversial that there are qualia. Some philosophers deny that there are any qualia, and by this they do not mean that there is no phenomenal consciousness.9 What they mean is that there is nothing to phenomenal consciousness over and above the representational properties of states of mind. In the case of visual perception, for example, these philosophers – known as intentionalists or representationalists – say that when I perceive something blue I am not aware of some intrinsic property of my state of mind, in addition to the blueness which I perceive. I look at a blue wall, and all I am aware of is the wall and its blueness. I am not, in addition, aware of some intrinsic properties of my state of mind.10 And this view says similar things about sensation. The believer in qualia says that, in such a case, one is also aware of what Ned Block has called ‘mental paint’: the intrinsic properties of one’s state of mind.

Things can become confusing here because other philosophers use the word ‘qualia’ simply as a synonym for ‘phenomenal character’ – so that to have phenomenal consciousness is, as a matter of definition, to have qualia. This is very unhelpful because it makes it impossible to understand what philosophers such as Tye and Dennett could possibly mean when they deny that there are qualia. To make a first attempt at clarifying matters here, we must distinguish two ways of using the term ‘qualia’: (i) to have qualia is simply to have experience with a phenomenal character; or (ii) qualia are non-intentional (non-representational) qualities of experience.

The debate about consciousness involves, it seems, a large amount of terminological confusion. We need to make a broad distinction between phenomenal consciousness – the thing to be explained – and those properties that are appealed to in order to explain phenomenal consciousness. Unless we do this we will not understand
what it is that philosophers are doing when they deny the existence of qualia. Superficially, it might look as if they are rejecting the phenomena of consciousness, whereas what they are really rejecting is a certain way of explaining phenomenal consciousness: in terms of qualia, non-intentional, non-representational properties of mental states.

These clarifications made, we must finally turn to an overdue topic, the mind–body problem.

Consciousness and physicalism

In Chapter 2 (‘The mind–body problem’) I said that the mind–body problem can be expressed in terms of the puzzlement which we feel when trying to understand how a mere piece of matter like the brain can be the source of something like consciousness. On the one hand, we feel that our consciousness must just be based on matter; but, on the other hand, we find it impossible to understand how this can be so. This is certainly what makes many people think that consciousness is mysterious; but, by itself, it is not a precise enough thought to give rise to a philosophical problem. Suppose someone were to look at a plant, and having found out about the processes of photosynthesis and cellular growth in plants, still found it incredible that plants could grow only with the help of sun, water and soil. Tough. No interesting philosophical consequences should be drawn from this person’s inability to understand the scientific facts. Of course, life and reproduction can look like remarkable and mysterious phenomena; but the proper response to this is simply to accept that certain phenomena in nature are remarkable and maybe even mysterious. But that doesn’t mean that they cannot be explained by science. The ability of creatures to reproduce themselves is now fairly well understood by scientists; it may be remarkable and mysterious for all that.

To approach the issue in another way, consider the argument that physicalist or materialist views typically give for their view that mental states (both thoughts and conscious states) are identical with states of the brain. In rough outline, they argue, first, that conscious
Consciousness and the mechanical mind

and other mental states have effects in the physical world (perhaps using the kinds of argument which I used in Chapter 2, ‘The causal picture of thoughts’, p. 54); and, second, that every physical happening is the result of purely physical causes, according to physical law (this is sometimes called ‘the causal closure of the physical’). I cannot go into the reasons for this second assumption in any detail here. Let’s just say that physicalists believe that this is the consequence of what we have learned from science: science succeeds in its explanatory endeavours by looking for the underlying mechanisms for things which happen. And looking for the underlying mechanisms ends up uncovering physical mechanisms – the sorts of mechanisms discovered in physics, the science of spacetime, matter and energy. As David Lewis puts it:

[T]here is some unified body of scientific theories of the sort we now accept, which together provide a true and exhaustive account of all physical phenomena. They are unified in that they are cumulative: the theory governing any physical phenomenon is explained by theories governing phenomena out of which that phenomenon is composed and by the way it is composed out of them. The same is true of the latter phenomena, and so on down to fundamental particles or fields governed by a few simple laws, more or less as conceived in present-day theoretical physics.

It is this kind of thing which grounds physicalists’ confidence in the idea that, ultimately, all physical effects are the result of physical causes. They then conclude that, if mental causes really do have effects in the physical world, then they must themselves be physical. For, if mental causes weren’t physical, then there would be physical effects which are brought about by non-physical causes, which contradicts the second assumption.

This is a quite general argument for identifying mental states with physical states (for example, states of the brain). Call it the ‘causal argument for physicalism’. Although it rests on a scientific or empirical assumption about the causal structure of the physical world, the causal argument for physicalism does not rely on scientists actually having discovered the basis in the brain (what
Consciousness and the mechanical mind

they tend to call the ‘neural correlate’\(^{13}\) of any particular mental state. Although most physicalists think that such neural correlates will eventually be found, they are not presupposing that they will be found; all they are presupposing in this argument is the causal nature of mental states and the causal closure of the physical world. It follows that one could object to the conclusion of the argument either by objecting to the causal nature of mental states, or by objecting to the causal closure of the physical world, or by saying that there is some confusion or fallacy in moving from these two assumptions to the conclusion that mental states are states of the brain.

But notice that it is not a serious objection to this conclusion just to say: ‘but mental states do not seem to be states of the brain!’ This is, it must be admitted, a very natural thought. For it is true that when one introspects one’s states of mind – in the case of trying to figure out what one is thinking, for example – it does not seem as if we are obtaining some sort of direct access to the neurons and synapses of our brains. But, if the argument above is right, then this evidence from introspection is irrelevant. For if it is true that mental states are states of the brain, then it will be true that, as a matter of fact, being a certain brain state will seem to you to be a certain way, although it might not seem to be a brain state. But that’s OK; it can seem to you that George Orwell wrote 1984 without its seeming to you that Eric Blair did, even though, as a matter of fact, Eric Arthur Blair did write 1984. (Logicians will say that ‘it seems to me that …’ is an intensional context: see Chapter 1, ‘Intentionality’, p. 30.) The conclusion of the causal argument for physicalism is that mental states are brain states. To object to this by saying, ‘but surely mental states can’t be brain states, because they don’t seem to be!’ is not to raise a genuine objection: it is just to reject the conclusion of the argument. It is as if someone said, in response to the claim that matter is energy, ‘matter cannot be energy because it does not seem like energy!’ In general, when someone asserts some proposition, P, it is not a real objection to say, ‘but P does not seem to be true; therefore it is not true!’ And the point is not that one might not be correct in denying P. The point is rather that there is a distinction between raising an objection to a thesis and denying the thesis.
Consciousness and the mechanical mind

So mental states might be brain states, even if they do not seem to be. We can illustrate this in another way, by using a famous story about Wittgenstein. ‘Why did people used to think that the sun went around the earth?’ Wittgenstein once asked. When one of his students replied ‘Because it looks as if the sun goes around the earth’, he answered, ‘And how would it look if the earth went around the sun?’ The answer, of course, is: exactly the same. So we can make a parallel point in the case of mind and brain: why do some people think that mental states are not brain states? Answer: because mental states do not seem like brain states. Response: but how would they seem if they were brain states? And the answer to this, of course, is: exactly the same. Therefore, there is no simple inference from the fact that being in a mental state makes things seem a certain way to any conclusion about whether mental states have a physical nature or not.

No simple inference; but maybe there is a more complicated one concealed inside this (admittedly very natural) objection. Some philosophers think so; and they think that it is consciousness which really causes the difficulty for physicalism (and, as we shall see, for the mechanical mind too). There are various versions of this problem of consciousness for physicalism. Here I will try and extract the essence of the problem; the Further reading section (pp. 231–232) will indicate ways in which the reader can explore it further.

The essence of the problem of consciousness derives from the apparent fact that any physicalist description of conscious states seems to be, in Nagel’s words, ‘logically compatible with the absence of consciousness’. The point can be made by comparison with other cases of scientific identifications – identifications of everyday phenomena with entities described in scientific language. Consider, for example, the identification of water with H₂O. Chemistry has discovered that the stuff that we call ‘water’ is made up of molecules which are themselves made up of atoms of hydrogen and oxygen. There is nothing more to being water than being made up of H₂O molecules; this is why we say that water is (i.e. is identical with) H₂O. Given this, then, it is not logically possible for H₂O to exist and water not to exist; after all, they are the same thing! Asking whether
there could be water without H₂O is like asking whether there could be George Orwell without Eric Arthur Blair. Of course not; they are the same thing.

If a conscious mental state – for example, a headache – were really identical with a brain state (call it ‘B’ for simplicity), then it would in a similar way be impossible for B to exist and for the headache not to exist. For, after all, they are supposed to be the same thing. But this case does seem to be different from the case of water and H₂O. For whereas the existence of water without H₂O seems absolutely impossible, the existence of B without the headache does seem to be possible. Why? The short answer is: because we can coherently conceive or imagine B existing without the headache existing. We can conceive, it seems, a creature who is in all the same brain states as I am in when I have a headache but who in fact does not have a headache. Imaginary creatures like this are known in the philosophical literature as ‘zombies’: a zombie is a physical replica of a conscious creature who is not actually conscious. The basic idea behind the zombie thought-experiment is that, although it does not seem possible to have H₂O without water, it does seem possible (because of the possibility of zombies) to have a brain state without a conscious state; so consciousness cannot be identical with or constituted by any brain states.

This seems like a very fast way to refute physicalism! However, although it is very controversial, the argument (when spelled out clearly) does not involve any obvious fallacy. So let’s spell it out more slowly and clearly. The first premise is:

1 If zombies are possible, then physicalism is false.

As we saw in Chapter 1, physicalism has been defined in many ways. But here we will just take it to be the view that is the conclusion of the causal argument above: mental states (including conscious and unconscious states) are identical with states of the brain. The argument against physicalism is not substantially changed, however, if we say that, instead of being identical with states of the brain, mental states are exhaustively constituted by
Consciousness and the mechanical mind

states of the brain. Identity and constitution are different relations, as identity is symmetrical where constitution is not (see Chapter 1: ‘Pictures and resemblance’, p. 13, for this feature of relations). If Orwell is identical with Blair, then Blair is identical with Orwell. But if a parliament is constituted by its members, then it does not follow that the members are constituted by parliament. Now, one could say that states of consciousness are constituted by states of the brain, or one could say that they are identical with states of the brain. Either way, the first premise does seem to be true. For both ideas are ways of expressing the idea that conscious states are nothing over and above states of the brain. Putting it metaphorically, the basic idea is that, according to physicalism, all God needs to do to create my conscious states is to create my physical brain. God does not need to add anything else. So, if it could be shown that creating my brain is not enough to create my states of consciousness, then physicalism would be false. Showing that zombies are possible is a way of showing that creating my brain is not enough to create my states of consciousness. This is why premise 1 is true.

The next premise is:

2 Zombies are conceivable (or imaginable).

What this means is that we can coherently imagine a physical replica of a conscious being (e.g. me) without any consciousness at all. This zombie-me would have all the same physical states as me, the same external appearance, and the same brain and so on. But he would not be conscious: he would have no sensations, no perceptions, no thoughts, no imagination, nothing. Perhaps we can allow him to have all sorts of unconscious mental states (the sort described in Chapter 1, ‘Thought and consciousness’, p. 26). But what he has nothing of is consciousness of any kind. Obviously, when we are imagining the zombie, we are imagining it from the ‘outside’; we cannot imagine it from the ‘inside’, from the zombie’s own point of view. For there is, of course, no such thing as the zombie’s point of view.

Let’s just be clear about what premise 2 says. If someone asserts
Consciousness and the mechanical mind

premise 2, they are not saying that there really are any zombies, or that for all I know, you might all be zombies, or that they are possible in any realistic or scientific sense. Not at all. One can deny outright that there are any zombies, deny that I have any doubts about whether you are conscious, and deny that there could be, consistent with the laws of nature as we know them, any such things – and one can still hold premise 3. Premise 3 asserts the mere, bare possibility of physical replicas who are not conscious.

There is no obvious contradiction in stating the zombie hypothesis. But maybe there is an unobvious one, something hidden in the assumptions we are making, which shows why premise 2 is really false. Perhaps we are merely thinking that we are imagining the zombie, but we aren’t really coherently imagining anything. It can happen that someone tries to imagine something, and seems to imagine it, but does not really succeed in imagining precisely that thing because it is not really possible. I might, for example, try and imagine being my brother. I think I can imagine this, living where he is living, doing what he is doing. But of course I cannot literally be my brother: no-one can literally be identical with someone else. This is impossible. So maybe I am failing to imagine literally being my brother, and really imagining something else. Maybe what I am really imagining is me, myself, living a life rather like my brother’s life. We can say a similar thing about the parallel case of water and H₂O: someone might think that they can imagine water not being H₂O, but having some other chemical structure. But, arguably, they are not really imagining this, but rather imagining something that looks just like water, but isn’t water (as water is, by hypothesis, H₂O).¹⁵ So someone can fail to imagine something because it is impossible: premise 2 might be false.

There is, however, another way of criticising the argument: we could agree that my being my brother is impossible; but all this shows is that one can imagine impossible things. In other words, we could accept the first two premises in this argument, but reject the move from there to the next premise:

3 Zombies are possible.
Consciousness and the mechanical mind

Obviously, 3 and premise 1 imply the conclusion:

4 Physicalism is false.

So anyone who wants to defend physicalism should concentrate on the key point in the argument, the move from premise 2 to premise 3. How is this move supposed to go? Premise 2 is supposed to provide the reason to believe in premise 3. The argument says that we should believe in premise 3 because of the truth of premise 2. Notice that it is one thing to say that if X is conceivable then X is possible, and quite another to say that being conceivable is the same thing as being possible. This is implausible. Some things may be imaginable without being really possible (e.g. someone might imagine a counterexample to a law of logic), and some things are possible without being imaginable (for example, for myself, I find it impossible to imagine or visualize curved spacetime). Imaginability and possibility are not the same thing. But they are related, according to this argument: imaginability is the best evidence there is for something’s being possible. Rather as perception stands to what is real, so imagination stands to what is possible. Perceiving something is good evidence that it is real; imagining something is good evidence that something is possible. But the real is not just the perceivable, just as the possible is not just the imaginable.

The physicalist will respond to this that while it may be true in general that the imagination is a good guide to possibility, it is not infallible, and it can lead us astray (remember the Churchlands’ example of the luminous room in Chapter 3, ‘The Chinese Room’, p. 123). And they would then argue that the debate about consciousness and zombies is an area where it does lead us astray. We imagine something, and we think it possible; but we are misled. Given the independent reasons provided for the truth of physicalism (the causal argument above), we know it cannot be possible. So what we can imagine is, strictly speaking, irrelevant to the truth of physicalism. That’s what the physicalist should say.

To take stock: there are two ways a physicalist can respond to the zombie argument. The first is to deny premise 2 and show that
Consciousness and the mechanical mind

zombies are not coherently conceivable. The second is to accept 2 and reject the move from 2 to 3. So, for the physicalist, either zombies are inconceivable and impossible, or they are conceivable but impossible. It seems to me that the second line of attack is less plausible: for if physicalists agree that, in some cases, imaginability is a good guide to possibility, then what is wrong with this particular case? Physicalists would be better off taking the first move, and attempt to deny that zombies are really, genuinely conceivable. They have to find some hidden confusion or incoherence in the zombie story. My own view is that there is no such incoherence; but the issues here are very complicated.

The limits of scientific knowledge

But suppose that the physicalist can show that there is a hidden confusion in the zombie story – maybe zombies are kind of conceivable, but not really possible. So the link between the brain and consciousness is necessary, appearances to the contrary. Still physicalism is not home and dry. For there are arguments, related to the zombie argument, which aim to show that, even if this were the case, physicalism would still have an epistemological shortcoming: there would nonetheless be things which physicalism could not explain. Even if physicalism were metaphysically correct – correct in the general claims it makes about the world – its account of our knowledge of the world will be necessarily incomplete.

The easiest way to see this is to outline briefly a famous argument, expressed in the most rigorous form in recent years by Frank Jackson: he called it ‘the knowledge argument’. Let’s put the argument this way. First, imagine that Louis is a brilliant scientist who is an absolute expert on the physics, physiology and psychology of taste, and on all the scientific facts about the making of wine, but has never actually tasted wine. Then one day Louis tastes some wine for the first time. ‘Amazing!’ he says, ‘so this is what Chateau Latour tastes like! Now I know.’

This little story can then provide the basis of an argument with two premises:
Before he tasted wine, Louis knew all the physical, physiological, psychological and enological facts about wine and tasting wine.

After he tasted wine, he learned something new: what wine tastes like.

Conclusion: Therefore, not everything that there is to know about tasting wine is something physical. There must therefore be non-physical things to learn about wine: viz. what it tastes like.

The argument is intriguing. For, if we accept the coherence of the imaginary story of Louis, then the premises seem to be very plausible. But the conclusion does seem to follow, fairly straightforwardly, from the premises. For if Louis did learn something new then there must be something that he learned. You can’t learn without learning something. And, because he already knew all the physical things that there are to know about wine and wine-tasting, the new thing he learns cannot be something physical. But if this is true then it must be that not everything we can know falls within the domain of physics. And not just physics: any science whatsoever that one could learn without having the experiences described by that science. Jackson concluded that physicalism is false: not everything is physical. But is this right?

The argument is very controversial, and has inspired many critical responses. Some people don’t like thought-experiments like the story of Louis. But it’s really hard to see what could possibly be wrong with the idea that, when someone drinks wine for the first time, they come to learn something new: they learn what it tastes like. So, if we were going to find something wrong with the story itself, it would have to be with the idea that someone could know all the physical facts about wine and wine tasting. True enough, it is hard to imagine what it would be to learn all these facts. As Dennett says, you don’t imagine someone having all the money in the world by imagining them being very rich. Well, yes; but if you really do want to imagine someone having all the money in the world, you surely wouldn’t go far wrong if you started off imagining
them being very very rich and then more so, without ever having to imagine them having more of anything of a different kind, just more of the same: money. And likewise with scientific knowledge: we don’t have to imagine Louis having anything of a very different kind from the kind of scientific knowledge that people have today: just more of the same.

The standard physicalist response to the argument is rather that it doesn’t show that there are any non-physical entities in the world. It just shows that there is non-physical knowledge of those entities. The objects of Louis’s knowledge, the physicalist argues, are all perfectly ordinary physical things: the wine is made up of alcohol, acid, sugar and other ordinary physical constituents. And we have not been shown anything which shows that the change in Louis’s subjective state is anything more than a change in the neurochemistry of his brain. Nothing in the argument, the physicalist claims, shows that there are any non-physical objects or properties, in Louis’s brain or outside it. But they do concede that there is a change in Louis’s state of knowledge: he knows something he did not know before. However, all this means is that states of knowledge are more numerous than the entities of which they are knowledge. (Just as we can know the same man as Orwell and come to know something new when we learn he is Blair.)

But this is not such a happy resting place for physicalists as they might think. For what this response concedes is that there are, in principle, limits to the kind of thing which physical science can tell us. Science can tell us about the chemical constitution of wine; but it can’t tell us what wine tastes like. Physicalists might say that this is not a big deal; but, if they do say this, they have to give up the idea that physics (or science in general) might be able to state every truth about the world, independently of the experiences and perspectives of conscious, thinking beings. For there are truths about what wine tastes like, and these are the kind of truths you can only learn having tasted wine. These are truths which Louis would not have learned before tasting wine, I believe, no matter how much science he knew. So there are limits to what science can teach us – though this is a conclusion which will only be surprising or
Consciousness and the mechanical mind

disturbing to those who thought that science could tell us every-
thing in the first place.

So let’s return finally to the mind–body problem. Contrary to
what we might have initially thought, the problem can now be
clearly and precisely formulated. The form of the problem is that of
a dilemma. The first horn of the dilemma concerns mental causa-
tion: if the mind is not a physical thing, then how can we make
sense of its causal interactions in the physical world? The causal
argument for physicalism says that we must therefore conclude that
the mind is identical with a physical thing. But the second horn of
the dilemma is that, if the mind is a physical thing, how can we
explain consciousness? Expressed in terms of the knowledge argu-
ment: how can we explain what it feels like to taste something, even
if tasting something is a purely physical phenomenon? Causation
drives towards physicalism, but consciousness drives us away
from it.

Conclusion: what do the problems of consciousness tell
us about the mechanical mind?

What does the mind–body problem have to do with the mechanical
mind? The mechanical view of the mind is a causal view of mind;
but it is not necessarily physicalist. So an attack on physicalism is
not necessarily an attack on the mechanical mind. The heart of the
mechanical view of the mind is the idea that the mind is a causal
mechanism which has its effects in behaviour. Mental representa-
tion undoubtedly has causal powers, as we saw in Chapter 2, so this
relates the mechanical mind directly to the mind–body problem. We
have found no good reason, in our investigations in this book, to
undermine this view of representation as causally potent. But the
mechanical view still has to engage with the causal argument for
physicalism outlined in this chapter; and, if a physicalist solution is
recommended, the view has to say something about the arguments
from consciousness which form the other half of the dilemma which
is the mind–body problem. Given the close inter-relations between
thought and consciousness, the question of consciousness cannot be
Consciousness and the mechanical mind

ignored by a defender of the mechanical mind. (Fodor, characteristically, disagrees: ‘I try never to think about consciousness. Or even to write about it.’19) The positive conclusion is that we have unearthed no powerful argument against the view that the mind is a causal mechanism which has its effects in behaviour.

Nonetheless, our investigations into the mechanical mind have also yielded one broad and negative conclusion: there seems to be a limit to the ways in which we can give reductive explanations of the distinctive features of the mind. We found in Chapter 3 that, although there are interesting connections between the ideas of computation and mental representation, there is no good reason to suppose that something could think simply by being a computer: reasoning is not just reckoning. In Chapter 4, we examined the Mentalese hypothesis as an account of the underlying mechanisms of thought; but this hypothesis does not reductively explain mental representation, but takes it for granted. The attempts to explain representation in non-mental terms examined in Chapter 5 foundered on some fundamental problems about misrepresentation and complexity. And, finally, in the present chapter, we have seen that, even if the attacks on physicalism from the ‘conceivability’ arguments are unsuccessful, they have variants which show that there are fundamental limits to our scientific knowledge of the world. Perhaps the proper lesson should be that we should try and be content with an understanding of mental concepts – representation, intentionality, thought and consciousness – which deals with them in their own terms, and does not try and give reductive accounts of them in terms of other sciences. And perhaps this is a conclusion which, in some sense, we already knew. Science, Einstein is supposed to have remarked, cannot give us the taste of chicken soup. But – when you think about it – wouldn’t it be weird if it did?

Further reading

Consciousness and the mechanical mind

classic paper, ‘What is it like to be a bat?’, Colin McGinn’s ‘Can we solve the mind–body problem?’, Jackson’s ‘Epiphenomenal qualia’, Block’s ‘On a confusion about a function of consciousness’ and many others. See also Conscious Experience edited by Thomas Metzinger (Paderborn: Schöningh 1995). Much of the agenda in recent philosophy of consciousness has been set by David Chalmers’s ambitious and rigorous The Conscious Mind (New York, NY and Oxford: Oxford University Press 1996). Joseph Levine's Purple Haze (New York, NY and Oxford: Oxford University Press 2001) gives a very clear, though ultimately pessimistic, account of the problem of consciousness for materialism, in terms of what Levine has christened the ‘explanatory gap’. David Papineau’s Thinking About Consciousness (Oxford: Oxford University Press 2002) is a very good defence of the view that the problems for physicalism lie in our concepts rather than in the substance of the world. On the debate over intentionality and qualia, Michael Tye’s Ten Problems of Consciousness (Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press 1995) is a good place to start. Daniel Dennett's Consciousness Explained (London: Allen Lane 1991) is a philosophical and literary tour de force, the culmination of Dennett’s thinking on consciousness; controversial and hugely readable, no philosopher of consciousness can afford to ignore it. Gregory McCulloch’s The Life of the Mind (London and New York: Routledge 2003) offers an unorthodox non-reductive perspective on these issues.
Glossary

adaptation  A trait of an organism whose nature is explained by natural selection.

algorithm  A step-by-step procedure for computing (finding the value of) a function. Also called an ‘effective procedure’ or a ‘mechanical procedure’.

behaviourism  In philosophy, the view that mental concepts can be exhaustively analysed in terms of concepts relating to behaviour. In psychology, the view that psychology can only study behaviour, because ‘inner mental states’ either are not scientifically tractable or do not exist.

common-sense psychology  Also called ‘folk psychology’; the network of assumptions about mental states that is employed by thinkers in explaining and predicting the behaviour of others.

compositionality  The thesis that the semantic (see semantics) and/or syntactic (see syntax) properties of complex linguistic expressions are determined by the semantic and/or syntactic properties of their simpler parts and their mode of combination.

computation  The use of an algorithm to calculate the value of a function.

content  A mental state has content (sometimes called ‘intentional content’ or ‘representational content’) when it has some representational character or intentionality. Content is propositional content when it is assessable as true or false. Thus, the belief that fish swim has propositional content; Anthony’s love for Cleopatra does not.

dualism  In general, a doctrine is dualistic when it postulates two fundamental kinds of entity or category. (Sometimes the term is reserved for views according to which these two kinds of entity give rise to a problematic tension; but this is not essential.)
Glossary

Substance dualism is the view that reality consists of two fundamental kinds of substance, mental and material substance (this is also called Cartesian dualism, after the Latinised version of Descartes's surname). Property dualism is the view that there are two fundamental kinds of property in the world, mental and physical.

**extension** The entity in the world for which an expression stands. Thus, the extension of the name ‘Julius Caesar’ is the man Caesar himself; the extension of the predicate ‘is a man’ is the set of all men.

**extensionality** A feature of logical languages and linguistic contexts (parts of a language). A context or language is extensional when the semantic properties (truth and falsity) (see semantics) of sentences in it depend only on the extensions (see extension) of the constituent words, or the truth or falsity of the constituent sentences.

**folk psychology** See common-sense psychology.

**function** In mathematics, a mathematical operation that determines an output for a given input (e.g. addition, subtraction); a computable function is one for which there is an algorithm. In biology, the purpose or role or capacity of an organ in the life of the organism (e.g. the function of the heart is to pump blood around the body).

**functionalism** In the philosophy of mind, the view that mental states are characterised by their causal roles or causal profiles – that is, the pattern of inputs and outputs (or typical causes and effects) which are characteristic of that state. Analytic functionalism says that the meanings of the vocabulary of common-sense psychology provides knowledge of these causal roles; psychofunctionalism says that empirical psychology will provide the knowledge of the causal roles.

**intensionality** A feature of logical or linguistic contexts. A context is intensional when it is not extensional (see extensionality).

**intentionality** The mind’s capacity to direct itself on things, or to represent the world.

**language of thought (LOT)** The system of mental representation,
hypothesised by Jerry Fodor, to explain reasoning and other mental processes. Fodor calls the system a language because it has syntax and semantics, as with natural language.

**materialism** Sometimes used as a synonym for physicalism. Otherwise, the view that everything is material, that is, made of matter.

**Mentalese** See language of thought.

**mentalism** The general approach in philosophy and psychology, opposed to behaviourism, which asserts the existence of inner mental states and processes which are causally efficacious in producing behaviour.

**phenomenal consciousness** Conscious experience in the broadest sense. A creature has phenomenal consciousness when there is something it is like to be that creature. A state of mind is phenomenally conscious when there is something it is like to be in that state of mind.

**phenomenal character** The specific character of a phenomenally conscious experience (see phenomenal consciousness).

**phenomenology** Literally, a theory of the phenomena or appearances. More specifically, the term has been used by Edmund Husserl and his followers for a specific approach to the study of appearances, which involves ‘bracketing’ (i.e. ignoring) questions about the external world when studying mental phenomena.

**physicalism** The view that either everything is physical or everything is determined by the physical. ‘Physical’ here means: the subject matter of physics.

**premise** In an argument, a premise is a claim from which a conclusion is drawn, usually along with other premises.

**program** A set of instructions that a computer uses to compute a given function.

**propositional attitude** A term invented by Bertrand Russell for those mental states the content of which is true or false, i.e. propositions. Beliefs are the paradigmatic propositional attitudes.

**qualia** The term is used in two senses. (i) The broad use has it that qualia are those properties of mental states in virtue of which
they have the **phenomenal character** they do. (ii) The more narrow use has it that qualia are the non-representational (non-intentional) properties of mental states in virtue of which they have the **phenomenal character** they do.

**semantics**  Narrowly speaking, a theory that studies the semantic properties of a language or representational system. More generally, those properties themselves: semantic properties are the properties of representations which relate them to the world, or the things they are about. Meaning, reference and truth are the paradigmatic semantic properties.

**simulation theory (or simulationism)**  The view that the practice of **common-sense psychology** involves primarily a technique of imagining oneself to be in another person’s position, and understanding their behaviour by using this kind of imaginative act.

**syntax**  Narrowly speaking, a theory that studies the syntactic properties of a language or representational system. More generally, those properties themselves: syntactic properties are the formal properties of representations, which determine whether an expression is well formed.

**teleology**  The theory of goals or purposes, or goal-directed behaviour. A theory (e.g. natural selection) can be a theory of teleology even if it ends up by explaining purposes in terms of simpler causal processes.

**Theory Theory**  The theory that **common-sense psychology** is somewhat akin to a scientific theory.

**Turing machine**  An abstract specification of a machine, invented by Alan Turing, consisting of an infinite tape with symbols written on it and a device which reads the tape; the device can perform a small number of simple operations: move across the tape; read a symbol on the tape; erase a symbol on the tape. The idea is meant to illustrate the most general features of computation. See **Turing’s thesis**.

**Turing’s thesis**  The thesis that any computable function can be computed by a **Turing machine**. Also called the Church–Turing thesis, after Alonzo Church, who put forward some similar ideas.
zombie  An imaginary physical replica of a human being who lacks consciousness. Sometimes a zombie is defined as a physical replica of a human being who lacks qualia; but this talk of qualia is not essential to the zombie hypothesis.
The mechanical mind: a chronology

1473 Copernicus challenges the claim that the earth is the centre of the universe
1616 William Harvey explains the circulation of the blood
1632 Galileo publishes his *Dialogue on the Two Great Systems of the World*
1641 Publication of René Descartes’s *Meditations*, in which he outlines the principles of his new science
1651 Publication of Thomas Hobbes’s *Leviathan*, in which he argued for a materialistic and mechanistic conception of human beings
1642 Blaise Pascal invents the first purely mechanical adding machine
1690 John Locke publishes *An Essay Concerning Human Understanding*
1694 Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz invents a calculating machine that can also multiply
1748 David Hume publishes *An Inquiry Concerning Human Understanding*
   Julien de la Mettrie publishes *L’Homme Machine* (*Man, the Machine*)
1786 Luigi Galvani reports the results of stimulating a frog’s muscles by the application of an electric current
1810 Franz Josef Gall publishes the first volume of the *Anatomy and Physiology of the Nervous System*
1820 Charles de Colmar invents a machine that can add, subtract, multiply and divide
   Joseph-Marie Jacquard invents the ‘Jacquard loom’ for weaving fabric, which uses punched boards which control the patterns to be woven
Chronology

1822 Charles Babbage proposes the design of a machine to perform differential equations, which he called the ‘difference engine’. Babbage worked on the difference engine for ten years, after which he started working on his analytical engine, which was (in conception at least) the first general-purpose computer

1854 George Boole publishes *The Laws of Thought*

1856 Hermann von Helmholtz publishes the first volume of his *Handbook of Physiological Optics*

1858 Wilhelm Wundt, often considered one of the founders of scientific psychology, becomes an assistant of Hermann von Helmholtz

1859 Charles Darwin publishes *Origin of Species*

1873 Wundt publishes *Principles of Physiological Psychology*

1874 Franz Brentano publishes *Psychology from an Empirical Standpoint*

1879 Wundt establishes the first psychological laboratory in Leipzig

Gottlob Frege publishes his *Begriffsschrift* (*Concept-script*), the work that laid the foundations for modern logic

1883 The first laboratory of psychology in America is established at Johns Hopkins University

1886 Ernst Mach publishes *The Analysis of Sensations*

1890 William James publishes his *Principles of Psychology*

1895 Sigmund Freud and Josef Breuer publish *Studies on Hysteria*, the first work of psychoanalysis

1896 Herman Hollerith (1860–1929), founds the Tabulating Machine Company in 1896 (to become International Business Machines (IBM) in 1924). Using something similar to the Jacquard loom idea, he used a punch-card reader to compute the results of the US census

1899 Aspirin first used to cure headaches

1910 Bertrand Russell and Alfred North Whitehead publish *Principia Mathematica*, which attempts to explain mathematics in terms of simple logical notions
Chronology

1913 The behaviourist psychologist J.B. Watson publishes his paper, ‘Psychology as the behaviorist views it’
1923 Jean Piaget publishes *The Language and Thought of the Child*, a seminal work in developmental psychology
1931 Vannevar Bush develops a calculator for solving differential equations
1932 Kurt Gödel publishes his incompleteness theorems in the foundations of mathematics
1936 Alan Turing publishes his paper ‘On computable numbers’, in which the idea of a Turing machine is outlined
1941 German engineer Konrad Zuse develops a computer to design aeroplanes and missiles
1943 British Intelligence complete a code-breaking computer (‘Colossus’) to decode German military messages
1944 Howard Aitken of Harvard University, working with IBM, produces the first fully electronic calculator: the automatic sequence controlled calculator (known as ‘Mark I’), whose purpose was to create ballistic charts for the US Navy
1945 John von Neumann designs the electronic discrete variable automatic computer (EDVAC). EDVAC had a memory which holds a stored program as well as data, and a central processing unit. This ‘von Neumann architecture’ became central in computer design
1946 John Presper Eckert and John W. Mauchly, working at the University of Pennsylvania, build the electronic numerical integrator and calculator (ENIAC). ENIAC was a general-purpose computer which computed at speeds one thousand times faster than Aitken’s Mark I
1948 The invention of the transistor initiates some major changes in the computer’s development. The transistor was being used in computers by 1956
1949 Lithium is used to treat depression
1950 Turing publishes his article ‘Computing machinery and intelligence’, which describes the ‘Turing test’ for intelligence (‘the imitation game’)
Chronology

1953  Francis Crick, James Watson and Maurice Wilkins discover the structure of DNA

1957  Noam Chomsky publishes *Syntactic Structures*, in which he puts forward his view that surface features of language must be understood as the result of underlying operations or transformations.

1958  Jack Kilby, an American engineer, develops the integrated circuit, combining different electronic components on a small silicon disk, and allowing computers to become smaller

1960  Hilary Putnam publishes his defence of functionalism in the philosophy of mind, ‘Minds and machines’

1963  Donald Davidson publishes ‘Actions, reasons and causes’

1971  The term ‘cognitive science’ introduced by English scientist C. Longuet-Higgins

1971  The development of the Intel 4004 chip, which locates all the components of a computer (central processing unit, memory, etc.) on a tiny chip

1981  IBM introduces its first personal computer (PC)

1982  Posthumous publication of David Marr’s *Vision*

1984  Apple introduce its first ‘Macintosh’ computer, using the graphical user interface (mouse, windows, etc.) first developed by Xerox in the 1970s (and, ironically, deemed not commercially viable)

1988  The Human Genome Project established in Washington DC

1997  Gary Kasparov, the chess grandmaster and world champion, is defeated by ‘Deep Blue’, a chess-playing computer
Notes

1 The puzzle of representation


3 J. de la Mettrie, *Man, the Machine* (1748, translated by G. Bussey; Chicago, Ill.: Open Court 1912).


5 The quotation from de la Mettrie is from *Man, the Machine*. The quotation from Vogt is from John Passmore, *A Hundred Years of Philosophy* (Harmondsworth: Penguin 1968), p. 36.


9 For the question, for example, of how music can express emotion, see Malcolm Budd's *Music and the Emotions* (London: Routledge 1986).

10 See Nelson Goodman's *Languages of Art* (Indianapolis, Ind.: Hackett 1976), Chapter 1.

11 As Wittgenstein puts it: ‘It is not similarity that makes the picture a portrait (it might be a striking resemblance of one person, and yet be a portrait of someone else it resembles less)’. *Philosophical Grammar* (Oxford: Blackwell 1974), §V.

12 Though Goodman argues that it is not even necessary: see *Languages of Art*, Chapter 1.
13 *Philosophical Investigations*, p. 54.

14 This is obviously a very simple way of putting the point. For more on convention, see David Lewis, *Convention* (Oxford: Blackwell 1969). For scepticism about the role of convention in language, see Donald Davidson, ‘Communication and convention,’ in his *Inquiries into Truth and Interpretation* (Oxford: Oxford University Press 1984).


16 See George Berkeley’s criticism of Locke’s doctrine of abstract ideas in his *Principles of Human Knowledge* (1710).


19 For more on this theme, see my *Elements of Mind*, §§34.


23 The idea of the unconscious in this sense is older than Freud; for an interesting discussion, see Neil Manson, ‘“A tumbling ground for whimsies”? The history and contemporary relevance of the conscious/unconscious contrast’, in Tim Crane and Sarah Patterson (eds.) *History of the Mind–Body Problem* (London: Routledge 2000).


27 For more on the distinction between intentionality and intensionality, see my *Elements of Mind*, §§4 and 35.
Notes to pp. 36–48


30 These remarks are directed against Quine: see Word and Object (Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press 1960), especially pp. 219–221.


32 Lewis Wolpert, Malignant Sadness: the Anatomy of Depression (London: Faber 1999). This is similar to the description of depression or melancholy given by Sartre in his Sketch for a Theory of the Emotions (London: Methuen 1971; originally published 1939); see especially pp.68–69.


2 Understanding thinkers and their thoughts

1 I heard the story from P.J. Fitzpatrick – unfortunately I have not been able to trace the source.

2 For a very clear and readable introduction, see the first half of Mark Solms and Oliver Turnbull, The Brain and the Inner World: an Introduction to the Neuroscience of Subjective Experience (New York, NY: Other Press 2002).


Notes to pp. 49–63


6 For some behaviourist literature, see W.G. Lycan (ed.) Mind and Cognition (Oxford: Blackwell 1990), §1; for a critique of behaviourism, see Ned Block, 'Psychologism and behaviourism', Philosophical Review 90, 1980.


8 For a critique of the behaviourist view of language, which has become a classic, see Chomsky's review of the behaviourist B.F. Skinner's book Verbal Behaviour, reprinted in Ned Block (ed.) Readings in the Philosophy of Psychology, volume II (London: Methuen 1980).


11 The best place to begin a study of causation is the collection edited by Ernest Sosa and Michael Tooley, Causation (Oxford: Oxford University Press 1993).


15 See 'Actions, reasons and causes' in Davidson, Essays on Actions and Events (Oxford: Oxford University Press 1980).


Notes to pp. 63–76


19 For a contrasting view, see J.J.C. Smart, Philosophy and Scientific Realism (London: Routledge and Kegan Paul 1963), and D.M. Armstrong, A Materialist Theory of the Mind, Chapter 12.


21 This is the approach taken by David Lewis in 'Psychophysical and theoretical identification', in Ned Block (ed.) Readings in the Philosophy of Psychology (London: Methuen 1980), volume I.


23 Morton, Frames of Mind, p. 28.


26 The vindication approach has been defended by Jerry Fodor: see Psychosemantics (Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press 1987), Chapter 1.


28 For a particularly clear statement of this line of argument, see especially Stephen Stich, From Folk Psychology to Cognitive Science.

29 Churchland, 'Eliminative materialism and the propositional attitudes', p. 73

30 Ibid., p. 76.


33 For more discussion of these points against eliminative materialism, see T. Horgan and James Woodward, 'Folk psychology is here to stay', in W.G. Lycan (ed.) Mind and Cognition, and Colin McGinn, Mental Content (Oxford: Blackwell 1989), Chapter 2.
3 Computers and thought

1 The example is from Ned Block, 'The computer model of the mind', in Daniel N. Osherson et al. (eds.) An Invitation to Cognitive Science, volume 3, Thinking (Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press 1990). This is an excellent introductory paper which covers ground not covered in this chapter – for example, the Turing test (see below).

2 For an account of Turing’s life, see Alan Hodges’s biography, Alan Turing: the Enigma (New York, NY: Simon & Schuster 1983).

3 In fact, the machine’s tape needs to be infinitely long. For an explanation, see, for example, Penrose, The Emperor’s New Mind, Chapter 2.

4 See Penrose, The Emperor’s New Mind, p. 54. See also Chapters 2 and 3 of Joseph Weizenbaum, Computer Power and Human Reason (Harmondsworth: Penguin 1976).


8 See D.H. Mellor, ‘How much of the mind is a computer?’, in D.H. Mellor, Matters of Metaphysics.

9 Jerry Fodor, The Language of Thought (Hassocks: Harvester 1975); see also Gallistel, The Organisation of Learning, p. 30.

10 Penrose, however, thinks that the ‘ultimate’ physics will not be computable, and that this fact is relevant to the study of the mind: see The Emperor’s New Mind, p. 558.


Notes to pp. 112–121


16 See Haugeland, Artificial Intelligence, p. 168 fn 2.


20 Turing's paper is reprinted in Boden (ed.) The Philosophy of Artificial Intelligence. For more on the Turing test, see Ned Block, 'The computer model of the mind', and his 'Psychologism and behaviourism'.

21 I am ignoring another controversial claim: that computers cannot think because a famous mathematical theorem, Gödel’s theorem, shows that thinking can involve recognising truths which are not provable – and hence not computable. This argument was first proposed by J.R. Lucas – see, for example, The Freedom of the Will (Oxford: Oxford University Press 1970) – and has been revived by Roger Penrose in The Emperor’s New Mind. Some writers think the Penrose–Lucas thesis is very important; others dismiss it in a few paragraphs. This is true both of the friends of the computational picture of the mind – see, for example, Glymour, Thinking Things Through, pp. 342–343 – and its enemies – see Dreyfus, What Computers Still Can’t Do (Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press, revised edition 1992), p. 345. In this book I will put the thesis to one side, as the issues behind it cannot be properly assessed without a lot of technical knowledge.

22 This story is from Harry Collins, ‘Will machines ever think?’, New Scientist, 20 June 1992, p. 36.


24 Dreyfus, What Computers Still Can’t Do, p. 3.

25 Ibid., p. xvii.


27 Dreyfus, What Computers Still Can’t Do, p. 37

28 Ibid., p. 27.
Notes to pp. 122–143

29 For a discussion of CYC, see Jack Copeland, *Artificial Intelligence: a Philosophical Introduction* (Oxford: Blackwell 1993), Chapter 5, §6, from which I have borrowed these details. Dreyfus discusses CYC in detail in the introduction to *What Computers Still Can’t Do*.

30 *What Computers Still Can’t Do*, p. 43.


34 Quoted by Dreyfus, *What Computers Still Can’t Do*, p. 129.

35 See Copeland, *Artificial Intelligence*, Chapters 5 and 9, for a fair-minded assessment of the failures of AI.

4 The mechanisms of thought


3 For more discussion of intentionalism, see my *Elements of Mind*, especially Chapters 3 and 5.

4 For brilliant discussions of these questions, though, see Dennett, ‘Towards a cognitive theory of consciousness’ and ‘Why you can’t make a computer that feels pain’, in his *Brainstorms*. See also John Haugeland, ‘The nature and plausibility of cognitivism’, in Haugeland J. (ed.) *Mind Design*.

5 This was certainly Hilary Putnam’s aim in ‘The nature of mental states’ and ‘Philosophy and our mental life’ in his *Mind, Language and Reality* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press 1975) and other papers that put forward the functionalist theory. It was not his aim, I think, to put forward a computational theory of mind.


7 The example comes from Dennis Stampe, ‘Toward a causal theory of linguistic representation’, *Midwest Studies in Philosophy*.


9 Fodor sometimes uses a nice comparison between thinking and the sorts of deductions Sherlock Holmes performs to solve his cases. See ‘Fodor’s guide to
Notes to pp. 145–159

11 Fodor’s guide to mental representation’, p. 22.
12 For a fairly accessible introduction to Chomsky’s philosophical ideas, see his Rules and Representations (Oxford: Blackwell 1980).
14 See Peter Lipton, Inference to the Best Explanation (London: Routledge 1991).
15 D.M. Armstrong argues that perception is belief in A Materialist Theory of the Mind, Chapter 7.
17 For informational encapsulation as the most important feature of modules, see The Modularity of Mind, pp. 37 and 71; despite some changes in his views over the years, this point has remained constant: see The Mind Doesn’t Work That Way (Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press 2000), p. 63.
18 The Modularity of Mind, p. 80.
19 See Chomsky, Rules and Representations.
23 Searle, for example, thinks that ‘the homunculus fallacy is endemic to computational models of cognition’, The Rediscovery of the Mind (Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press 1992), p. 226.
24 The view taken in this paragraph is closer to that of William G. Lycan, Consciousness (Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press 1987).
Notes to pp. 161–177

33 See, for example, Jack Copeland, *Artificial Intelligence*, Chapter 9, §8, and Chapter 10, §9.
34 See, for example, Robert Cummins, *Meaning and Mental Representation* (Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press 1989), pp. 147–156.
35 See Cummins’s discussion in *Meaning and Mental Representation*, pp. 150–152.

5 Explaining mental representation

2 See Fodor, ‘Semantics Wisconsin style’, in *A Theory of Content and Other Essays*, p. 32. Notice that Fodor later (‘A theory of content’) weakens the requirement to a sufficient condition only.
4 Fodor is one: see, for example, *A Theory of Content*, p. x.
6 ‘Semantics, Wisconsin style’ in *A Theory of Content*, p. 33.
8 *Psychosemantics*, Chapter 4.
Notes to pp. 180–192


12 Fodor, *A Theory of Content*, p. 90, takes a different view.

13 For one of the original statements of this idea, see Dennis Stampe, ‘Toward a causal theory of linguistic representation’. For an excellent critical discussion, see Cummins, *Meaning and Mental Representation*, pp. 40ff.


15 The term is Stampe’s: see ‘Toward a causal theory of linguistic representation’, especially pp. 51–52.


17 The theory was first proposed in *Psychosemantics*, Chapter 4, and later refined in *A Theory of Content*, Chapter 4. For discussion, see Cummins, *Meaning and Mental Representation*, Chapter 5, and the essays in George Rey and Barry Loewer (eds.) *Meaning in Mind* (Oxford: Blackwell 1991).

18 This theory has been defended by J.T. Whyte, ‘Success semantics’, *Analysis* 50, 1990, and David Papineau, *Philosophical Naturalism*. The seeds of the idea are in F.P. Ramsey, ‘Facts and propositions’ in his *Philosophical Papers*, and developed by R.B. Braithwaite ‘Belief and action’, *Proceedings of the Aristotelian Society*, Supplementary Volume 20, 1946.


21 This point was anticipated by Chisholm, *Perceiving*, Chapter 11, fn 13, against Braithwaite’s version of the success theory in his paper ‘Belief and action’.

22 See Papineau, *Philosophical Naturalism*, Chapter 3, and Ruth Garrett Millikan, *Language, Thought and other Biological Categories* (Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press 1986). In this section I follow Papineau’s version of the theory, which is not exactly the same as Millikan’s, for reasons which need not concern us.

23 Davidson’s ‘swampman’ example is in ‘Knowing one’s own mind,’ reprinted in Q. Cassam (ed.) *Self-Knowledge* (Oxford: Oxford University Press 1994). Cummins uses this objection against Millikan and Papineau in *Meaning and
Notes to pp. 193–202

Mental Representation, Chapter 7. See Millikan, Language, Thought and other Biological Categories, p. 94, for her response.

24 Papineau, Philosophical Naturalism, p. 93.


26 For a criticism of this notion of function, see Fodor, The Mind Doesn’t Work That Way, p. 85.


28 For an excellent introduction to these issues, see Paul Griffiths and Kim Sterelny, Sex and Death: an Introduction to the Philosophy of Biology (Chicago, Ill.: University of Chicago Press 1999).


32 For a particularly clear statement of this point, see Fodor, In Critical Condition, pp. 163–166.


35 Fodor, In Critical Condition, p. 166.

36 Fodor gives a decisive argument for this claim in The Mind Doesn’t Work That Way on pp. 80–84.

37 Fodor, Psychosemantics, p. 97

38 Wittgenstein, On Certainty (Oxford: Blackwell 1979), §141

253
6 Consciousness and the mechanical mind

1 Those interested only in the problem of consciousness can skip this introductory section, which is intended to link the question about consciousness to the rest of the book.


3 Francis Bacon, Advancement of Learning, Book 2, iv, 2.

4 For an example of this kind of response, see Michael Tye, The Imagery Debate (Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press 1992), Chapters 1 and 2.


Notes to pp. 217–231

7 Ned Block uses the term in this way: see 'Inverted earth' in Block, Flanagan and Güzeldere (eds.) The Nature of Consciousness.

8 This is how David Chalmers expresses it in The Conscious Mind (Oxford: Oxford University Press 1996).

9 See Daniel Dennett, 'Quining qualia', in Lycan (ed.) Mind and Cognition.

10 For intentionalist theories of mind, see Michael Tye, Ten Problems of Consciousness (Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press 1995), and Gilbert Harman, 'The intrinsic qualities of experience', in Block, Flanagan and Güzeldere (eds.) The Nature of Consciousness. For a general survey, see my Elements of Mind, Chapter 3.

11 For discussion of this principle, which he calls the 'completeness of physics', see David Papineau, Thinking about Consciousness (Oxford: Oxford University Press 2002). For some critical discussion, see Tim Crane, Elements of Mind, Chapter 2.


14 See Chalmers, The Conscious Mind, for a detailed discussion of zombies; for an earlier version of the same idea, see Ned Block, 'Troubles with functionalism', in Block (ed.) Readings in the Philosophy of Psychology, volume I.

15 This idea comes from Saul Kripke's influential discussions in Naming and Necessity (Oxford: Blackwell 1980), lecture III.

16 See Frank Jackson's 'Epiphenomenal qualia' in Lycan (ed.) Mind and Cognition, and the responses to the argument reprinted there by David Lewis, 'What experience teaches', and Laurence Nemirow, 'Physicalism and the cognitive role of acquaintance'.

17 Daniel Dennett is one: see Consciousness Explained (London: Allen Lane 1991).

18 Consciousness Explained, p. 380ff.

19 In Critical Condition, p. 73.
Index

adaptation and adaptationism 194–5, 233
algorithms 87–91, 233; automatic 104–9; functions and 87–8; see also Turing machines
analogue representation 101
and-gate 113, 145
animal psychology 80–1
Anscombe, G.E.M. 59
Aquinas, St Thomas 31
argument (of function) 86
arguments: valid 144
Aristotle 2–3
Artificial Intelligence 114–18
Asymmetric Dependence theory (Fodor) see representation
Babbage, Charles 114
Behaviourism 49–52, 117, 233
belief and thought 24
belief content 25; success theory of 185–9
binary notation 97
biological function: mental representation and 189–94; aetiological theory of 193
black boxes 105–6
Boden, Margaret 114
Boole, George 113–4
brains and computers 163
Brentano, Franz 31
Brentano’s Thesis 32, 36–40
causal laws 62, 175
causality 55–62; counterfactuals and 56; explanation and 56–7; regularities and 57–8
ceteris paribus clauses 158
Cheney, D.L. 180
Chinese Room 123–8
Chomsky, Noam 147, 152, 197, 241, 245
Church, Alonzo 99
Church’s Thesis 99, 103
Churchland, Patricia 127–8
Churchland, Paul 72–5, 127–8
cognition: computational theory of 133
common-sense psychology 53–4; applied to animals 80; elimination of 72–7; ontology of 72; and scientific psychology 70–80; Theory, Theory of see Theory Theory; theory versus simulation 77–80; vindication of 71–2
computability: of theories 104
computable functions 88
computation: vehicles of 164
computers 83–129; thinking 110–15
conceptual definitions see definitions
connectionism 159–67
‘consensus reality’ 122
convention 20
counterfactuals 56
Cummins, Robert 164, 181, 203–4
CYC project 121–2
Index

da Vinci, Leonardo 2
Davidson, Donald 59, 192
definitions: conceptual and
naturalistic 172–5; reductive
169–172
Dennett, Daniel 107, 155, 218, 228
Descartes, René 2, 4–5, 28, 46, 234
desires: biological function and 189–
91; satisfaction of 188
digital representation 101
disjunction problem 179, 185
Dretske, Fred 182
Dreyfus, Hubert 118–23, 128, 159
dualism 45–6, 233–4
effective procedures: 87; Turing
machines and 99; see also
algorithms
Einstein, Albert 26, 231
eliminative materialism 72–4, 78, 197
Emperor’s New Mind, The (Penrose) 29
ENIAC 108
error: problem of 178–85
evolutionary psychology 194–200
existential generalization 34–5
expert systems 115
explanation: causality and 56–7
extensional contexts 33

Feigl, Herbert 26
flow charts 88–9
Fodor, Jerry 103, 141–3, 146, 148–54,
156, 160, 166, 170–1, 175, 183–5,
199, 201, 231
folk psychology see common-sense
psychology
frame problem 123
Freud, Sigmund 29, 75
function(s): algorithms and 85–92;
biological 189–93; computable
88; instantiating versus computing
102–4; mathematical 85;
teleological 182; truth- 86, 114
functional analysis (of machines) 106

Galileo 3
Gallistel, C.R. 80–1
Glanvill, Joseph 44
GOFAI (Good Old-Fashioned AI) 161
Grice, H.P. 175

Haugeland, John 145, 161
Heal, Jane 77
Heuristics 109, 118, 159
Hobbes, Thomas 4, 20, 130
homunculus fallacy 155
Hume, David 55, 57
ideal conditions 181–2
idealism 45–7
ideas: as mental images 21
inferences 143–4
informational encapsulation 151
intensionality 32–5
intensionality 1, 30–6; intensionality
and 32–5; intention and 32; of
mental states 37–8; original versus
derived 40, 192; see also Brentano’s
Thesis
interpretation function 203
knowing how/knowing that 120
knowledge: argument 227–8; tacit
see tacit knowledge; without
observation 47
la Mettrie, Julien de 4, 5
language of thought see Mentalese
Last Judgement (Michelangelo) 17
laws of nature 57
Laws of Thought, The (Boole) 113
Leibniz, G.W. 114
Index

Lenat, Doug 122
*Leviathan* (Hobbes) 130
Lewis, David 220
linguistic representation 20–3
Locke, John 20
logic 143–4; rules of 157–8

Mach bands 149–50
machine table 93–5, 98, 132
materialism 5–6, 45–6, 219; see
  also physicalism; eliminative
materialism
meaning: concept of 175; natural
  (Grice) 176
mechanical world picture 2–4
Meno (Plato) 28
mental representation(s) 22–6;
  biological function and 189–93;
  causal theories of 175; mind as
  'containing' 124; non-reductive
  theory of 200–7; and success in
  action 185–8; as a theoretical
  notion 170; see also representation
mental states: intentionality of 36–9
Mentalese 135–8; argument for
  140–8; problems for 154–9; tacit
  knowledge of 147
Michelangelo 17
Millikan, Ruth 189
mind–body problem 43–7, 219, 230
misrepresentation problem 179–82
*modus ponens* 144–5, 157
modularity thesis 148–54
Molière 46
Morton, Adam 77

Nagel, Thomas 216, 222
natural meaning see meaning
necessary and sufficient conditions, 14
neural networks 163
normal conditions see ideal conditions

ontological 73
’organic’ world picture 4
Orwell, George 33, 119
other minds 47–54; scepticism about
  48

pain 37–8, 132–3
Papineau, David 189
parallel distributed processing (PDP)
  162
Penrose, Roger 29
phenomenology 212–14, 235
physicalism 45, 58, 219–27, 235; see
  also materialism
pictorial representation see
  representation
Pioneer 10 8
Plato 28
programs 108, 160; variable
  realisation of 109
propositional attitudes 24–6; thoughts
  and 26
psychology: common-sense see
  common-sense psychology; natural
  laws of 6; scientific 70–7
*Psychology from an Empirical
  Standpoint* (Brentano) 31
Pylyshyn, Zenon 151, 166

qualia 39, 131, 215–19, 235
Quine, W.V. 77–8, 156, 173

reduction(ism) 5–6, 169–172,
  219–226
reductive definitions see definitions
regularities: accidental 58; causality
  and 57–8
reliable indication 177
representation 8–40; analogue 101;
  Asymmetric Dependence theory of
  184–6; causal theories of 175–6;
Index

collection and 20; digital 101; distributed 162; idea of 11–13; ideas and 21; linguistic 20–3; medium of 136; mental see mental representation; pictorial 13–28; of situations 20; vehicles of 136
Representational Theory of Mind 133
rules: following versus conforming to 154–6; thinking and 119
Russell, Bertrand 25
Rutherford, E. 6
Sartre, Jean-Paul 134
scepticism 48–9
Searle, John 32, 111, 118, 123–8, 156
semantics, syntax and see syntax
Seyfarth, R.M. 180
Simon, Herbert 128
Socrates 28
Sturgeon, Scott 165
substitutivity salva veritate 33
sufficient conditions see necessary and sufficient condition
syntax: semantics and 137–140
tacit knowledge 67, 79–80, 147, 153, 156
teleology 236
theories 53, 63–4; computability of 104
Theory Theory (of common-sense psychology) 63, 68–9, 76–80
thinking see thought
thinking computers 109–14
thought: belief and 24; causal
picture of 54–62; computers and 83–129; consciousness and 26–31; definition of term 23; language of see Mentalese; propositional attitudes and 26; and rules 119–24;
'Tower Bridge' picture 203–4
truth-functions see functions
Turing, Alan 114, 116
Turing machines 92–9; effective procedures and 99; internal states of 96; machines tables 93–5, 98, 103, 132; representation and 103–4
Turing Test 117–18
type/token distinction 136
'universal character' see Leibniz
validity 144–5
value (of function) 86
variables 86
vision: computational theories of 146–7
vitalism 74–5
Vogt, Karl 5

What Computers Can't Do (Dreyfus) 118
Wittgenstein, Ludwig 9, 18, 58–9, 173, 202, 222
Wolpert, Lewis 38

259